

GEORGE PHILIP & SON LTD
London: G



THE LONDON GEOGRAPHICAL INSTITUTE

l & Sons

BELL'S ILLUSTRATED CLASSICS

INTERMEDIATE SERIES

CAESAR'S CIVIL WAR

BOOK I

GEORGE BELL & SONS
LONDON: PORTUGAL ST., LINCOLN'S INN
CAMBRIDGE: DEIGHTON, BELL AND CO.
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
BOMBAY: A. H. WHEELER AND CO.



Lérida.

C. IVLI CAESARIS

COMMENTARIORVM

DE BELLO CIVILI

LIBER PRIMVS

EDITED

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES AND VOCABULARY

BY THE

REV. W. J. BENSLY, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AT SHERBORNE SCHOOL

WITH 32 ILLUSTRATIONS AND 2 MAPS

LONDON

GEORGE BELL & SONS

1909

OXFORD : HORACE HART
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

PREFACE

Gratefully to acknowledge one's obligations would appear to be the sole use of a preface to a book of this kind, and that use I gladly make of it. The text of this edition is, with one or two very slight alterations, that of the eleventh edition of Kraner and Hofmann (Berlin, 1906), but in matters of orthography I have followed the Clarendon Press text edited by Du Pontet in 1900. For the commentary I am largely indebted to the editions of Kraner and Hofmann, and of Peskett (Cambridge, 1896), and to the *Lexicon Caesarianum* of Menge and Preuss (Leipzig, 1890). Other editions which I have consulted include those of Moberly (Oxford, 1876), Montgomrey (Macmillan, 1891), Menge (Gotha, 1903), and Fügner (Leipzig, 1904), and the Translation by Long (Oxford, 1906). In preparing the Introduction and the military and topographical notes I have made use of various standard Histories, and especially of Warde Fowler's *Julius Caesar* (2nd edition, Putnam, 1897), and of the invaluable *Jules César, Guerre Civile* of the late Colonel Stoffel (Paris, 1887); from the latter work are taken, with one exception, all the dates in the headings to the chapters. The article on the Roman army is contributed, as in other volumes of this series, by Mr. A. C. Liddell, of Westminster School.

There remains the still pleasanter task of thanking those who have helped me by personal encouragement

and advice. Chief of these are the Rev. Canon F. B. Westcott, late Head Master of Sherborne, my colleague and former tutor, Mr. W. B. Wildman, and my brother, Professor Edward Bensly, of Aberystwyth. These three have all been kind enough to read through the notes as they passed through the press and to point out some of the editor's sins, both of commission and of omission ; they must not, however, be held responsible for any of the errors that still remain. For valuable aid in preparing the Introduction I wish also to thank my friend and former pupil, Mr. Philip Gray, of the Asiatic Petroleum Company, who has diverted his classical gifts to a more lucrative pursuit than that of literature. Lastly, for help in correcting proofs, I must express my obligations to various Sherborne friends, both masters and boys, and especially to my sister.

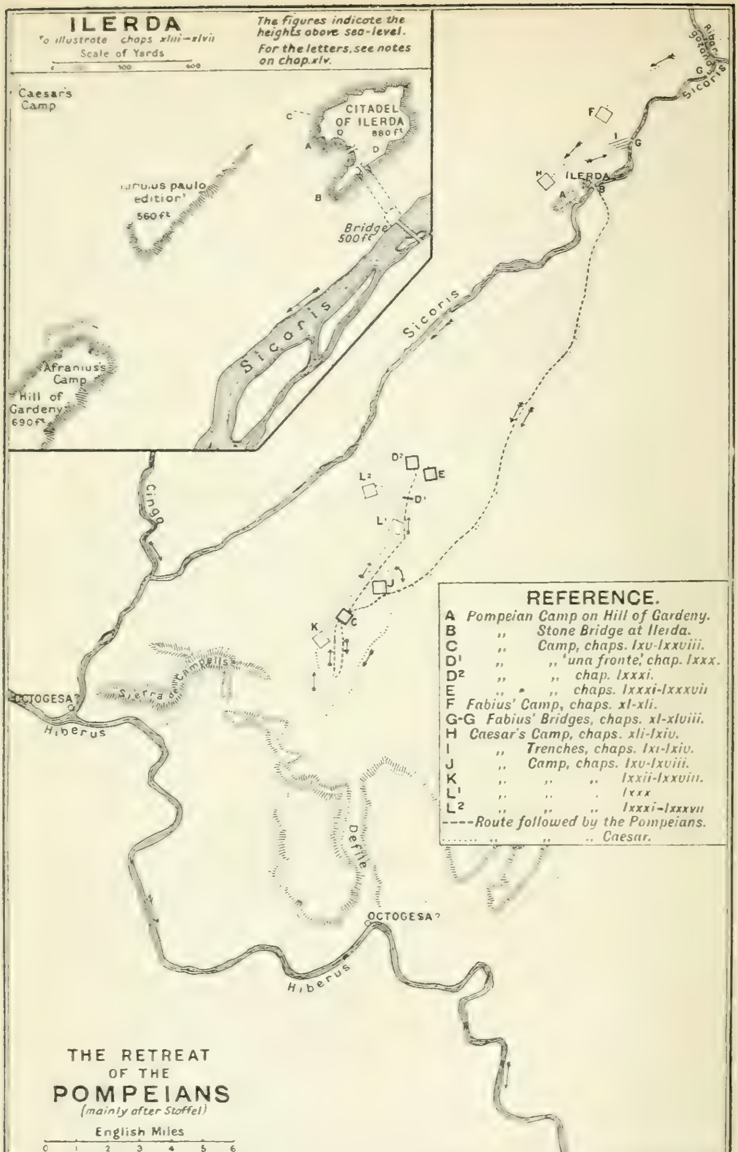
This particular Book of Caesar's Commentaries has long had a great attraction for me, and in 1907 I spent a most enjoyable Easter holiday in visiting Lérida and its neighbourhood ; I should like to add a final word of gratitude to Señor Claudio Baiguet, of Lérida, who courteously took pity on an ignorant foreigner and gave him every possible assistance.

SHERBORNE,
June, 1909.

CONTENTS

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

MAPS



GEORGE PHILIP & SON LTD — THE LONDON GEOGRAPHICAL INSTITUTE

London George Bell & Sons

INTRODUCTION

A. Summary of Dates

THE Civil War of 49 to 46 B.C. is the last act in the drama of the Fall of Senatorial Government, on which the curtain rose at least as far back as the times of the Gracchi. The last act is far the most exciting, but to appreciate it one must know the outline of those that have preceded it. Something is said further on of the career of the hero, Caesar, but the action had begun before he appeared upon the stage. The reader should refresh his memory, if need be, from some textbook of Roman History. The summary given below is intended only for reference :—

B.C.

133. Tiberius Gracchus tribune.
123–122. Gaius Gracchus tribune.
In their hands the tribunate becomes a danger to the Senate, and the power of the latter is defied.

123. Gaius Gracchus gains the support of the Equites (capitalist class) in his campaign against the Senate.

107. Marius, consul, is given military command in Africa by the people in defiance of the Senate. Henceforth the army gradually drifts from the Senatorial side and becomes personally attached to great generals.

100. Saturninus, tribune, compels the Senate to agree to his laws.

87. Rome is entirely overrun by the democrats (*populares*) headed by Marius and Cinna.

82–79. Sulla, dictator, champions the Senate and temporarily revives its authority (especially by the degradation of the tribunate).

78. Death of Sulla.

70. Pompey and Crassus, consuls, undo Sulla's work: further weakening of the Senate.

67–66. The people give Pompey naval and military commands in defiance of the Senate.

63. Catiline's conspiracy against the Senatorial party.

60. Caesar (extreme democrat) associates with himself Pompey (hitherto a moderate supporter of the Senate) and Crassus (leader of the Equites)—[first Triumvirate]. They are able by combining forces to overrule the Senate.

59. Caesar, consul, defies the Senate's authority.

B. C.
58–49. Caesar proconsul in Gaul.
53. Crassus killed in Syria.
52. Riots at Rome. Pompey, created sole consul, returns to the side of the Senate, and breaks off his alliance with Caesar.
49. The Senate defy Caesar and Civil War begins. Caesar pursues Pompey and his troops to Brundisium: they escape to Dyrrachium and leave Caesar master of Italy. Caesar defeats the Pompeian armies in Spain.
48. Caesar defeats Pompey at Pharsalus in Thessaly. Death of Pompey.
46. Caesar defeats the Pompeians at Thapsus in Africa.
45. Caesar defeats the Pompeians at Munda in Spain.
45–44. Caesar sole ruler of the Empire.
44. Caesar murdered.

B. Caesar's Life to B. C. 49

1. C. Iulius Caesar was born on the 12th of Quintilis—the month afterwards named after him July—in the year 102 B.C. He belonged to an ancient and honourable family and his father was at one time praetor. His aunt, Iulia, was the wife of the great democratic leader, Marius; the latter took an interest in the young Caesar, and gave him a small honorary post as flamen dialis (priest of Iupiter) in 87. From this moment Caesar's political inclinations were determined. In 83 he further identified himself with the Populares by marrying Cornelia,[1] the daughter of Marius's partner Cinna, and so earned the unfavourable notice of the senatorial leader Sulla, who proscribed, but afterwards pardoned, him.

In 80 he gained his first experience of war by serving as aide-de-camp to Minucius Thermus in Asia Minor, and won the 'civic crown' for saving a comrade's life at Mytilene. Returning to Rome on Sulla's death in 78 he quickly gained a reputation as an eloquent pleader in the law courts; yet he failed to reach the ambitious standard which he had set before himself, and accordingly withdrew from Italy once more to study oratory at Rhodes. On the

[1] In order to marry Cornelia, Caesar divorced his first wife Cossutia. Cornelia died in 68: Caesar afterwards married in 67 Pompeia (divorced in 62), and finally in 59 Calpurnia who survived him.

way there he was captured by pirates and held for a high ransom—his own valuation of himself. While waiting for the ransom to arrive he made himself at home among the pirates, and went so far as to ask them to listen to his poems. For these the pirates failed to display proper enthusiasm, and on the arrival of the ransom Caesar left them with a promise to return and crucify them. On the earliest opportunity he equipped a small expedition, caught the pirates still making merry with the proceeds of his ransom, and fulfilled his promise.

While studying at Rhodes he had another chance of showing his fighting powers. The Roman province of Asia was attacked by Mithridates, and was in serious danger of being lost. Caesar crossed to the mainland, organized a body of troops, and was largely instrumental in saving the province.

He returned to Rome in 74, and devoted his energies for the next few years to the task of winning the favour of the popular party. By his skill as an orator, by his attractive personality, and by lavish bribery, he quickly grew to be the favourite of the Roman mob and the terror of the Optimates, or conservative party. In 68 he began official life as quaestor (financial secretary to the governor) in Further Spain. Three years later he acted as aedile (minister of public works) at Rome, and added greatly to his popularity, and incidentally to his debts, by lavishing enormous sums of money on the public games. In 63 he was appointed Pontifex Maximus, or superintendent of the state religion, and held this office for the rest of his life. In the same year, while Cicero was consul, took place the abortive conspiracy of Catiline—an attempt to overthrow the constitution—in which it is possible that Caesar was implicated. However, if he was, he escaped detection, and after acting in the following year as praetor (judge) at the capital, he went out again to Further Spain in 61 as propraetor (provincial governor). Here he succeeded, as did most provincial governors, in gaining money enough not only to pay his enormous debts, but to set himself up with a respectable fortune as well. Moreover, during his term of office, he saw a considerable amount of fighting, and made the very

important discovery that in addition to his other virtues he had a natural genius for soldiering and was a born commander of troops.

On his return to Rome in 60 he was elected consul for 59, with a nonentity called Bibulus for his colleague. At the same time he formed the coalition with Pompey and Crassus which is usually known as the First Triumvirate. Pompey had just returned to Rome after a series of brilliant campaigns in the East, and was indignant at the coldness and opposition that he, the foremost Roman of the day, was meeting with from the Senate. Hitherto he had been looked upon as the champion of the Optimates, but in order to attain his ends in spite of the Senate he consented to associate himself with the democratic leader Caesar, and with the millionaire Crassus; and the three combined to help each other to gain the objects of their desires. Shortly afterwards the alliance was strengthened by the marriage of Pompey (*aet.* 47) with Caesar's daughter Iulia (*aet.* 22).

In 59 Caesar was consul, and—as one might expect—by no means a constitutional consul. The irresponsible demagogue, the idol of the masses, with all the strength of the coalition at his back, gaily disregarded not only his fatuous colleague Bibulus, but every law and every privilege that were supposed to be in force, not excluding the veto of the tribunes. This last it is especially interesting to remember in view of the fact that ten years later he marched across the frontier into Italy, ostensibly as the champion of the tribunes' rights.

During the year of his consulship he was appointed, with the help of the Triumvirate, proconsul of Gallia Cisalpina, Illyria, and Gallia Narbonensis, for a period of five years from March 1, 59. The two former provinces provided him with funds and with a home for the winter from which he could watch events at Rome; while beyond the Alps he found full scope for exercising his lately discovered military genius and for working out his destiny. Hitherto only a strip—the modern Provence—of the Mediterranean coast-land of Gaul had acknowledged the authority of Rome; but now in eight wonderful campaigns Caesar succeeded in completely

crushing every tribe that opposed him, from the Rhine to the Pyrenees. The work was one of extreme difficulty and involved tremendous efforts on the part both of the general and his troops, but his final triumph was complete. We are not, however, immediately concerned with the Gallic War, and need only add that military critics are unanimous in their verdict that by these campaigns Caesar made good his position as one of the half-dozen greatest generals in history. A more immediate result was that he attached to himself a splendidly organized army ready and eager to follow him anywhere.

2. We now come to the intricate constitutional questions which render the understanding of this period peculiarly difficult. The facts as generally accepted seem briefly to be these. In 56 a meeting of the Triumvirate took place at Luca in Etruria, when it was decided that Caesar's command should be prolonged for five years, from March 1, 54, to March 1, 49. It was likewise decided that Pompey and Crassus should be consuls for 55, and that afterwards Crassus should receive the province of Syria and Pompey the two Spanish provinces. Such was the united power of the triumviri that this programme was forthwith carried out in spite of the strenuous opposition of the senate. After his year of consulship Crassus went to Syria, and in 53 he lost his army and his life at Carrhae in Mesopotamia. Pompey in the meantime commissioned three of his generals to govern Spain, and himself remained outside Rome.[1] The progress of events did not commend itself to Caesar: he had hoped that Pompey and Crassus, while joining forces to oppose the Optimates, would yet counterbalance each other, so that neither would become too prominent. Crassus however was now dead, and Pompey had never left Italy, but was ready at hand to intrigue, if occasion should arise, with Caesar's opponents in the capital. Further, early in 52, Clodius (a disreputable mob leader who had made himself useful to Caesar) was murdered; riots occurred at Rome in connexion with his murder, and to restore order Pompey was elected sole consul by the Senate. By his

[1] A proconsul could not enter the city without forfeiting his *imperium*.

success in this position—a quite irregular one, for he was at the same time consul in Rome and proconsul of the Spains—Pompey regained his waning popularity, and entered into more friendly relations with the Senate and the Optimates, from whom he had broken when he joined the Triumvirate in 60.

Pompey had always shown himself loyal and honest, ready to help the republic, yet unwilling to usurp unconstitutional authority. But several new factors had now begun materially to influence his actions. One of these factors was the death of his wife Iulia, and the breaking thereby of the family tie which bound him to Caesar; another was his jealousy of Caesar's ascendant star; and a third was his own continued bad health. In these causes, and especially in the last, may probably be found the explanation of the rapid changes of mind and mood which Pompey exhibited during his later years.

In the course of his consulship in 52 several important enactments were passed: it will be simplest to tabulate them as follows:—

(*a*) A plebiscitum to enable Caesar to be a candidate in his absence in July, 49, for the consulship of 48.

(*b*) A law to prohibit consuls and praetors from holding provincial governorships till the expiration of five years from the end of their term of office.

(*c*) A law (or perhaps a clause in the last law) to reaffirm the old regulation that no one should stand for the consulship in his absence.

(*d*) A senatus consultum to prolong Pompey's command in Spain for five years from the end of his present consulship.[1]

Caesar's one object at this time was to secure for himself the consulship for 48; he seems honestly to have wanted nothing further. He knew that if he came back to Rome as a private citizen, even for the few days necessary for the elections, he would certainly be prosecuted by the Optimates

[1] This senatus consultum was of course a direct contravention of the law (*b*) above; but Pompey easily persuaded the Senate to make an exception in his own case. Tacitus has good reason for calling him 'suarum legum auctor idem ac subversor' (*Ann.* iii. 28).

for the unconstitutional acts of his first consulship; and very probably he might be murdered. But he thought that if he returned as chief magistrate all would be well. His term of office in Gaul would naturally expire at the end of February 49. But the usual custom was for the consuls of one year to become proconsuls of important provinces for the next year. Caesar therefore hoped that one of the consuls for 49 would be elected to the proconsulship of Gaul, but would not be able to take over the command until January 1, 48, and that therefore he, Caesar, would be able to retain his proconsulship until the date on which his own consulship (if he were elected) would begin.[1] But (*b*) interfered very seriously with his plans. Under this law it was impossible for either of the consuls for 49 to succeed Caesar as proconsul; but the post would be given to some ex-consul of five years' standing, who would be free to succeed to the command on March 1, 49. Further (*c*) took away from Caesar the privilege conferred by the plebiscitum (*a*), which had been passed earlier in the year. This discrepancy was pointed out by Caesar's friends to Pompey, and a clause was added to (*c*) to except Caesar from its operation, but apparently the addition was made so late that its legality was a matter of dispute.

During this eventful year of Pompey's consulship Caesar was engaged in a desperate struggle with a general rebellion in Gaul. By the autumn of 51 the revolt was crushed, and the proconsul could spare time once more to look to his interests at Rome. What he lacked was an agent among the magistrates in the capital. He had failed to get his own candidate elected consul for 50, but he now succeeded in buying the support of Curio, one of the new tribunes and hitherto a resolute conservative, and he could have found no more useful ally.[2] During 50 Curio succeeded in cleverly postponing the question of Caesar's recall; and at the same time he threw out the suggestion that the fairest method would be for Pompey and Caesar to give up their commands at the same time. At the elections

[1] The consuls' term of office lasted from January 1 to December 31.

[2] Cf. Lucan, *Pharsalia* iv. 819 'Momentumque fuit mutatus Curio rerum'.

in July, 50, the Caesarian candidate again failed to secure the consulship, but two Caesarians were elected tribunes in the persons of M. Antonius and Q. Cassius. At last, on Dec. 1, 50, the question of Caesar's command was voted upon in the Senate, and it was decided by a large majority that Caesar should return to Rome as a private citizen if he wished to be a candidate at the consular elections in the following July. The presiding consul next put forward a motion that Pompey should resign his Spanish proconsulship—a proposal purposely worded so that it might appear to be a personal insult to Pompey. This, as the proposer hoped, was rejected, but thereupon Curio rose and moved that, as a matter of equity, Caesar and Pompey should resign their commands simultaneously. So carefully worded was Curio's motion and so eloquent his speech in its support that it appeared to involve no attack on Pompey, as the last motion had done, but to be a perfectly fair and just proposal which would provide a satisfactory escape from a difficult situation. The senate were won over to what they believed to be the side of peace, and the motion was passed by 370 votes to 22.

But the result of this resolution was the reverse of the senate's expectation. Instead of bringing about a peaceful settlement it merely precipitated war. Caesar's enemies were roused to fury: they knew perfectly well that if Caesar was allowed to come to Rome without the presence of Pompey's troops to overawe him, his influence with the mob was such that no prosecution could be brought against him, and that he would easily succeed in winning the consulship. And when he was consul, what would follow? They feared for the constitution, and they feared, too, for themselves. At the very least he would prove a second Marius, who would mercilessly wreak vengeance on his opponents. Led by the consul Marcellus, they easily persuaded Pompey to disregard the decree, and thus definitely to join the anti-Caesarian party; they then began to think of making preparations for war. On Dec. 10 the new tribunes succeeded to their office, and Curio, once more a private citizen, left Rome in order to join Caesar in Cisalpine Gaul and to report on the situation. Caesar had until now hoped for peace, and had only one legion south of

the Alps. On hearing Curio's report he immediately sent orders for other legions to join him, and took up his position at the frontier town of Ravenna. Thence he sent back Curio to Rome, bearing a dispatch in which he undertook to obey the decree of the senate and give up his command, if Pompey would do the same. This dispatch was to be delivered by Curio to the new consuls when they assumed office on January 1.

Such is the situation when the narrative in this book begins. But the start is so abrupt, and so little explanation is given of the very complicated position of affairs, that there is little doubt that some chapters are missing. There is also a gap at the end of Book VIII of the Gallic War—the book in which Hirtius describes Caesar's campaign of 51 and his actions during 50. Perhaps it is possible that the missing fragments may yet be discovered.

Those who wish thoroughly to understand the situation will certainly not be content with the summary given above. They should read what the chief historians have to say, not be confused by their divergencies, and strike the balance for themselves. Especially interesting, though strongly anti-Caesarian, is the account in Ferrero's *Greatness and Decline of Rome* (Tr. Zimmern; Heinemann, 1907).

C. Caesar as a General

It was in Spain in 61 that Caesar discovered himself to be a general. He was then forty-one years old—an age at which few men take easily to a new field of action. But his lack of experience had compensations as well as disadvantages. He was not bound down to the recognized manœuvres and stereotyped tactics of the day, but was free to exercise his own originality. His success was due to the happy combination in his person of all the different qualities which go to make a leader—the power of inspiring devotion and enthusiasm and of exacting hard work and implicit obedience, the power of organization, the power of rapidly taking in a position and of making up his mind at once how to deal with it, the power of keeping a cool head in a critical situation. He possessed in addition an elo-

quent tongue, an athletic frame, magnificent courage, and an inexhaustible capacity for endurance. If one quality alone had to be chosen as especially characteristic of his genius, it would be the speed of his movements, his power of striking suddenly and unexpectedly, and of catching his opponents unprepared. Of the exercise of this quality the first book of the *Civil War* gives us plenty of examples. To his soldiers he was always a hero. Possessing great natural attractiveness he had had considerable practice during his career as a demagogue in cultivating those arts by which a man of the upper classes contrives to make himself acceptable to his social inferiors. He succeeded in remembering his men's names, addressed them as 'comrades', shared their dangers and hardships, watched for chances of praising them, and doubled their pay. His officers were almost equally attached to him, and during the Civil War, while multitudes deserted to Caesar, Labienus was the only man of importance who left him. A word may be added regarding the 'methods of barbarism' which have been laid to his charge. Barbarous to our way of thinking he admittedly was, but it is open to question whether he was more brutal than the average general of his day. If it had been so, he would probably have omitted to mention some of the incidents which he has recorded in his *Commentaries*. He showed in the Civil War that he understood the value of clemency, and when he had to deal with opponents who were Roman citizens his whole policy was changed. But in dealing with barbarians he regarded barbarity as not only legitimate but in certain cases essential. Above all he was ambitious—ambitious for himself and for Rome. He had made up his mind to conquer Gaul, and mercy and severity he regarded alike as means by which to accomplish his object. When mercy appeared to be the proper means to employ, then he was merciful; if he thought that mercy might be construed as weakness, he was frankly unmerciful. In a case of the latter kind his opinion of mercy was doubtless much the same as his opinion on a well-known occasion of boats as a method of crossing the Rhine: 'neque satis tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat.'

D. Caesar as an Author

Though the *Commentaries* of Caesar—seven books on the Gallic War and three on the Civil War—are the only works of his which survive, there have come down to us the titles of a number of others which illustrate very forcibly the versatility of his genius. These lost works include poems on various subjects, treatises on Grammar, on Astronomy, and on the Auspices, and a violent attack on Cato—a remarkable output for a man whose leisure must have been of the scantiest, and to whom literature was a mere by pursuit.

The *Commentaries* on the Gallic War are believed to have been composed during the winter of 52–51, and describe Caesar's first seven campaigns in Gaul. A description of the final campaign was added later by Hirtius, a personal friend of Caesar and one of his *legati*. These *Commentaries* are the earliest Roman historical writings which have survived; but that fact forms a very small part of their claim to distinction. A general's account of his own work should always prove interesting, but in this case one of the greatest generals who ever led an army into the field has written what is universally admitted to be the greatest military history that exists. It is quite conceivable, moreover, that until Caesar had actually written the book, he hardly realized his powers as an historian. He called what he wrote merely *Commentarii*, which roughly corresponds to 'Notes' or 'Memoranda'. Hirtius tells us how easily and quickly he dashed them off, and both Hirtius and Cicero record that Caesar's professed object was merely to provide material for the real historians who were to follow him; but, adds Hirtius, the *Commentaries* 'adeo probantur omnium iudicio ut praerepta, non praebita, facultas scriptoribus videatur'. Cicero too, the greatest man of letters of the period, bestows the highest possible praise on Caesar both as orator and as historian. The style of the Gallic *Commentaries* he describes as 'unadorned, straightforward, and elegant, with all rhetorical argument stripped off as one strips off a garment'.[1] And modern historians, though they differ widely in their estimate of Caesar's work and cha-

[1] Cic. *Brut. De Clar. Or.* 262; written in 46 B.C.

racter, yet are entirely at one in their opinion of his writings. It is universally admitted that the purity of the language, the simplicity of the style and the clearness of the narrative are past all praise.

Furthermore, the author's consummate military ability and knowledge of engineering give life and reality to his descriptions of the disposition of troops, of tactical manœuvres, of entrenching, of bridge-building, and the like; while we understand something of the love his soldiers bore him when we see how kindly he passes almost without comment over their mistakes, but repeatedly praises their courage and endurance, and time and again singles out for special commendation some individual act of heroism.

The books *De Bello Civili* were probably written[1] in 46, and describe the course of events from the beginning of 49 until the autumn of 48. Doubtless Caesar had intended to continue further, but time and leisure were wanting, and it was left to Hirtius, or to another, to add accounts of the final African and Spanish campaigns. Nearly all that has been said of the *Gallic War* applies equally to the *Civil War*, but there are several reasons why the latter should prove the more interesting of the two. In the first place the wars in Gaul, important as they are, cannot bear comparison for a moment with the fascinating excitement of the civil struggle. Secondly, in Gaul Caesar was fighting against barbarians, ignorant of the finer arts of war, while in the Civil War he was opposed by civilized troops and Roman generals, and above all by the genius of Pompey himself, second only to his own. Lastly, one of Caesar's objects in writing the *Civil War* was to justify his own actions. In every constitutional struggle, as we know from our experience of home politics,

[1] Mr. Warde Fowler (*Classical Philology*, vol. iii, 1908, No. 2) points out that there are indications in the narrative, in Book II, of Curio's African campaign that Caesar had been over the ground himself. But, as far as we know, he had never visited the African Province before his own campaign there in the spring of 46. He returned to Rome in June and stayed there till November, and to this period of comparative leisure Mr. Warde Fowler would assign the compilation of the Curio episode, and by presumption that of the rest of the work.

both parties are anxious to claim a monopoly of patriotism. It was obviously much easier for Pompey and the conservative Senate to pose as defenders of the constitution, than for Caesar to make the same claim while he invaded Italy with his legions and forced the chief magistrates to fly from the capital. But in this book Caesar records his view that *he*, and not Pompey, was the true champion of the Republic. Sometimes he does this by actual argument, but for the most part 'without any terms of reprobation, with scarcely any harsh language, with merely that wondrous skill in manipulating the series of facts which genius possesses, he makes his readers, even against their prepossessions, disapprove of Pompey's attitude, and condemn the bitter hostility of the Senate'.[1] In plain English some of the statements made by Caesar in this book, at any rate in the first few chapters, are not strictly true. Either consciously or, at times perhaps, unconsciously he slurs over unconstitutional actions of his own, and invites his readers' attention to those of his opponents. There is no reason to feel surprise at this: on the contrary it is wonderful that the narrative is as fair as it is. Caesar was only human. In the courts of justice he had been an eloquent pleader on behalf of others, and he was now engaged in attempting to justify the course he himself had pursued. Under such conditions it would have taxed the integrity of a saint—and Caesar was no saint—to regard events from a perfectly unbiased standpoint.[2]

[1] C. T. Cruttwell, *History of Roman Literature*.

[2] In opposition to the German critics and to the Italian historian Ferrero, Mr. Warde Fowler, in the article quoted on the opposite page, argues very strongly in support of Caesar's absolute honesty in this matter. He writes:—

'If Caesar did not write these books till 46, three years had elapsed since the events narrated in Book I, and his mind had been fully occupied with other matters since then; so that slips of memory would be natural and unavoidable. That his memory should sometimes deceive him in the way of self-justification was psychologically inevitable; and it does not follow that a man who in 46 had nothing to fear from popular opinion was deliberately trying to put himself right by telling lies which thousands of people then living would know to be such.'

E. Caesar's Person and Character

Caesar's temperance in eating and drinking, and the strenuous life he led, were reflected in his personal appearance. He was tall and spare, and his face was thin and hollow-cheeked, although, except during the last months of his life, his health was always sound and vigorous. Every one interested in him should make a point of seeing the very remarkable bust in the British Museum which is believed to represent him. The strong, handsome, though almost ascetic, face is surmounted by a high and preternaturally broad forehead; and the firm chin combines with the lines round the mouth and between the eyes to produce a very stern and somewhat sad expression. One feels that one would do a great deal to avoid rousing the anger of the owner of such a face. It is the likeness, says Mr. Warde Fowler, of a 'severe schoolmaster of the world'. And if in addition we can imagine this face lit by a pair of piercing eyes,[1] which in moments of passion would seem to have had the faculty of changing colour,[2] we shall be able partly to realize what a formidable presence he possessed.

But we can be sure, from what history tells us, that the bust represents only one side of the man's character. When occasion required he knew how to be stern; but for the most part he was even-tempered and affable, disarming hostility and winning affection by his tactful courtesy. And, if we may draw an inference from the last lines of chapter xxxix, he was not deficient in a sense of simple humour.

It is superfluous to enlarge on the many-sided genius of Caesar. The tremendous ability of the man is indisputable, but opinions differ very greatly regarding the way in which he used it. Was he a saviour of society with no object before him but the happiness and the glory of his country, or was he an impudent adventurer recklessly destroying every obstacle that barred the path to his own advancement? There is distinguished authority for either view, and the reader must judge for himself. But whether Caesar is to us a hero or

[1] 'Eye whose bend doth awe the world,' Shakespeare, *Julius Caesar*.

[2] 'Nec scire utrum sis albus an ater homo,' Catullus, *Ode* xciii.

a villain, a 'spirit of health or goblin damn'd', we cannot deny the greatness of the man nor the greatness of the work which he accomplished. Perhaps there were nobler Roman leaders, there were certainly many more ignoble, but in the whole history of his country, and not merely in his own generation, Caesar stands out pre-eminent—'the foremost man of all' the Roman 'world'.

F. Roman Official Government

All Italians at this period possessed the Roman citizenship. Citizens were divided into thirty-five tribes, and each tribe was subdivided into ten centuries. The **Comitia Tributa**[1] elected the tribunes, aediles, quaestors, and lesser magistrates, and passed *plebiscita* which had the full force of laws. The **Comitia Centuriata** elected the consuls, praetors, and censors, and passed *leges*, which, however, required the approval of the Senate before they could be enforced. In these assemblies each tribe or century could give one vote only—the vote approved by the majority of its members. The members of the **Senate** numbered 600, and held office for life. No one was eligible below the rank of a quaestor, and as vacancies occurred they were filled by men of quaestorial rank in order of seniority. The Senate formed a body of men of proved ability, who were convened from time to time to consult on matters of importance, and to tender their advice. Their powers were not clearly defined, but, until recently, their authority had usually been accepted with the deference due to a body of recognized experience. A resolution of the Senate (*senatus consultum*) became law if it was not vetoed by a tribune or a superior magistrate. The Senate also had the right, in time of danger, to pass a *senatus consultum ultimum* by which all laws were tempo-

[1] It seems almost certain that in Caesar's time the Comitia Tributa and the Concilium Plebis were practically identical. When presided over by a curule magistrate the assembly was called Comitia Tributa, and when presided over by a Tribune of the Plebs it was called Concilium Plebis. There was probably no more difference between them than there is between the House of Commons with the Speaker in the chair and the same House in Committee under the presidency of the Chairman of Committees.

rarily suspended and the chief magistrates were given dictatorial powers.

The two **Consuls** were the chief magistrates of the Republic. They presided at elections and over important meetings of the Senate, and generally supervised state business.

The eight **Praetors** were the leading law-officers and presided as judges in the various courts.

The four **Aediles** combined the functions of a modern Home Secretary and First Commissioner of Works. They also had charge of the organization of certain public games, to the cost of which they were expected to contribute lavishly from their own pockets.

The twenty **Quaestors** acted as financial secretaries; the *quaestores urbani* were the keepers of the treasury at Rome, while the *quaestores militares* served as paymasters to the governors of the various provinces.

All the above-mentioned magistrates held office for one year, and a man could not hold the same office again for ten years. Further, he was not eligible for the consulship until he had been praetor, nor for the praetorship until he had been quaestor; nor could he be elected to a superior office until two years had elapsed since he had last held office. Also, no man could be a quaestor under the age of twenty-eight, or praetor under thirty-one, or consul under thirty-four.

Until 52 B.C. (see Introd. B) the consuls and praetors, when their year at Rome expired, proceeded immediately to govern provinces for the following year as proconsuls or propraetors. They had been formally invested with the *imperium* in order to fulfil their duties at Rome, and this *imperium* they now exercised with much greater freedom of action in their respective provinces. As an outward sign of this authority, both consuls and praetors at Rome, and proconsuls and propraetors in their provinces, were preceded by attendants (*lictores*) carrying bundles of rods (*fasces*).

The two **Censors** were elected every five years, but held office only for eighteen months. Their work was to supervise the finances, assess property, arrange for the collection of taxes, and draw up registers of the various divisions of

the citizens. These powers, however, were much curtailed during the last years of the Republic.

The ten **Tribunes of the Plebs** held office for one year. Nearly all other offices were open to patricians and plebeians alike, but candidature for the tribunate was restricted to plebeians (men, that is, whose ancestors centuries before had been in a position of inferiority, for by this time the plebeians had long possessed at least as many privileges as the patricians). However, a patrician could avoid the difficulty by being adopted into a plebeian family. The official duties of the tribunes were of little account, but their privileges were considerable. The most important of them was the right to veto any proposal made by a magistrate at any assembly. Their powers were largely cut down by Sulla in 81, but were restored by Pompey in 70.

The **Pontifex Maximus** was appointed for life. He was the president of the body of fifteen priests who formed the *collegium pontificum*. He arranged for the holding of festivals, appointed junior priests, and generally superintended the state religion. The election of the *pontifices* was managed by a committee of the Comitia Tributa.

Although after 89 B.C. all Italians possessed the full Roman citizenship, yet there still remained differences partly of terminology and partly of organization among the towns and villages. Those places, where colonies of Roman citizens had long before been planted, retained their old name *coloniae*: others, which had previously possessed the citizenship, and had been liable to the burdens (*munia*) entailed by it, were still called *municipia*; both were allowed a measure of self-government and possessed *duumviri* or *quattuorviri* (chief magistrates) and *decuriones* (town-councillors). A third class, more recently enfranchised, were known as *praefecturae*, and were governed by a *praefectus iuri dicundo* sent annually from Rome. The names *coloniae*, *municipia*, and *praefecturae* are however to some extent interchangeable: for all *coloniae* were subject to *munia* and some *municipia* were controlled by *praefecti*.

G. The Roman Army

By A. C. Liddell, M.A., *Assistant Master at Westminster School.*

The legion. From the reign of Servius Tullius (B.C. 578–534) every Roman citizen who possessed a certain amount of property was required to serve in the army and provide his own equipment; only the very poorest were excused from service. The richest men served as cavalry, those who were not rich enough to be horsemen as infantry. In the time of Camillus (B.C. 406) pay (*stipendium*) was given to all soldiers, and a new cavalry was instituted not chosen by wealth. Marius (B.C. 106–102) abolished property qualifications altogether and enlisted any citizen who was willing to serve, and after the citizenship was given to all Italians in B.C. 89 there were so many poor men ready to become soldiers that the upper and middle classes were no longer called upon, though they remained liable for service. Of the formation of the army in early times not much is known, but from the time of Camillus the legion was drawn up in three lines: the first of 1,200 young men, called *hastati*; the second of 1,200 men in the prime of life, *principes*; the third of 600 veterans, *triarii*. Besides these there were 1,200 *velites*, light-armed skirmishers. The first three classes were all armed alike with helmet, sword, greaves, cuirass, and lance, and each line consisted of ten maniples, and each maniple of two centuries commanded by two centurions. Of the 1,200 *velites*, twenty were allotted to each century. Hence a legion would consist of—

Hastati:[1]	
10 maniples of 120 men = 20 centuries of 60 men =	1200
Principes:	
10 maniples of 120 men = 20 centuries of 60 men =	1200
Triarii:	
10 maniples of 60 men = 20 centuries of 30 men =	600
Velites: at 20 to each century . . . . . . =	1200
	4200

[1] These names are derived from an earlier formation, for the *hastati* were not armed with a *hasta*, as their name implies; nor did the *principes* fight in the front line.

To each legion also was attached 300 cavalry, divided into ten squadrons (*turmae*) of thirty men each, each *turma* under three decurions and three under-officers (*optiones*).

Besides this levy of citizens, the Italian allies provided a contingent of at least an equal number of infantry and three times as many cavalry. The allied infantry fought on the wings and was divided into twenty cohorts.

The reforms of Marius (B. C. 106–102). Finding that an adequate army could no longer be raised according to the old system, Marius, as has been said, abolished the property qualification, and the army now became an army of mercenary soldiers armed and paid by the state. From this time all the soldiers of the legion were armed alike, while the *velites* were done away with, their place being taken by light-armed auxiliary troops. A further change made by Marius was the arrangement by cohorts instead of by maniples. The legion was now divided into ten cohorts, in each of which were three maniples of *hastati*, *principes*, and *triarii*, and each maniple contained two centuries. The names *hastati*, &c., after this merely had reference to the relative rank of the centurions, the officers in command of a century (*centuria*, or more commonly *ordo*).

Number of men in a legion. Nominally the number of men in a legion in Caesar's time was 6,000, but Caesar's would rarely contain more than 3,500 or 3,600; still, whatever the strength of the legion, the number of cohorts was always ten, so that each cohort would consist of, on the average, 360 men, each maniple of 120.

Names of the legions. The legions were numbered according to the order of their enrolment, *prima*, *secunda*, and so on, and they also had special names, given them from various causes; sometimes from the place of levy, as v. Urbana; or from the place where a victory had been gained, as iv. Scythica; or from some distinguishing quality, as vi. Victrix, xxi. Rapax. The cohorts were numbered, 1, 2, 3 . . . 10, the first consisting of the most experienced and efficient men.

The auxiliary troops (auxilia). Besides the heavy-armed legionary soldiers, there were light-armed auxiliary troops attached to the army, which were either furnished by

allied states or raised in the provinces. They served on foot, and their numbers varied according to circumstances, but in an ordinary way they would be at least as numerous as the legionaries. They included javelin throwers (*iaculatores*), slingers (*funditores*) and archers (*sagittarii*), and from the fact that they were usually stationed on the wings (*alae*), they were sometimes called *alares* or *alarii*.

The cavalry (equites). Each legion had attached to it a body of 300 cavalry (in Caesar's army about 400), composed of foreigners, chiefly Gauls, Spaniards, and Numidians. The cavalry was divided into wings or squadrons (*alae*); each *ala* subdivided into troops (*turmae*), and each *turma* into three *decuriae*, commanded by decurions (*decuriones*). Caesar employed them mainly for skirmishing and scouting purposes, or for the pursuit of a defeated enemy. Their armour consisted of an iron coat of mail, a helmet, greaves, a shield, a lance, and a long sword.

The engineer-corps. The engineers (*fabri*) were under the command of an officer called *praefectus fabrum*; their duties were to mend armour, keep the siege material in order, build bridges, and superintend mining operations.

Accompanying the army were *calones*, camp-followers, slaves who acted as the soldiers' servants; *lixae*, sutlers, who followed the legions for trading purposes and sold provisions; and *mercatores*, traders who bought the booty from the soldiers. Traders of all descriptions had booths for their goods outside the camp.

The officers of the army. 1. *The general.* The whole army was commanded by a general having *imperium*, full military power; that is, by a consul, praetor, proconsul or propraetor. He wore the *paludamentum*, a robe of scarlet wool, embroidered with gold; he was called the *dux belli*, but after a victory he was greeted by his soldiers as *imperator*.

2. The *legati* were the lieutenants or adjutants of the general. The usual number was three, but that might be increased at the instance of the general; for example, Caesar had ten in Gaul. They held their appointment from the Senate, but in the campaign were of course answerable to the general, who took credit for their successes, but was at

the same time responsible for their mistakes. In battle they commanded divisions of the army, and might hold independent commands at times.

3. The *quaestors* were the paymasters of the forces, and had charge of the military chest; they had to look after the feeding and paying of the soldiers, the disposal of the booty and of the prisoners to the slave-dealers who followed the army. On occasion they were entrusted by the general with a separate command.

4. The *Tribuni militum* or *militares*. Each legion had six tribunes, each of whom held command for two months. They were chosen partly by the people, partly by the general; Caesar's, however, were all appointed by himself. They were mostly young men of equestrian rank, and their appointment depended rather upon family and personal influence with the general than upon military qualifications. As one might naturally expect, Caesar never seems to have allowed them to conduct any important operations where they had the chance of getting into mischief.

5. The *praefecti* were also of equestrian rank and were appointed by the general. To them were entrusted commands over the allies and auxiliary troops, and various other duties.

6. The *centurions* occupied a place between that of the commissioned and the non-commissioned officer in a modern army. They were chosen, by the general, from the ranks for their experience and skill; but were rarely promoted to higher posts, except from one cohort to another. They were sixty in number, two to each maniple, the senior (*centurio prior*) commanding the first division, the junior (*posterior*) the second division. After the division of the legion into *hastati*, *principes*, and *triarii* disappeared, the names were still retained to signify the rank of the centurions; thus the lowest centurion was *decimus hastatus posterior*, i. e. the junior centurion of the tenth cohort: the senior centurion of the whole legion was called in full *primi pili centurio* (*prior* being omitted and the word *pilus* substituted for *triarii*), but this was usually shortened into *primus pilus* or *primipilus*. The centurions carried as a mark of authority a vine-wand (*vitis*, whence the phrase *vite*

donari, to be chosen centurion) and a badge on their helmet, and they took part in the council of war. Caesar often makes honourable mention of the bravery of the centurions.

The arms of the legionary soldiers. 1. The defensive armour consisted of helmet, breastplate, greaves, and shield.

The helmet of the infantry (*galea*) was usually of leather strengthened with brass; that of the cavalry (*cassis*) of iron. On the march the helmet was carried hanging in front of the breast.

The breastplate (*lorica*) was a leather coat, strengthened with bands of metal.

The greaves (*ocreae*) were metal leg-guards reaching up to the knee; usually only one was worn, on the right leg, because the left leg was protected by the shield. Probably, however, *ocreae* were out of fashion in Caesar's time, and no longer worn.

The shield (*scutum*) was of wood covered with leather and with metal rims. In the middle was an iron knob or stud (*umbo*). The shield was decorated in various ways, and had therefore to protect it a cover which was removed before battle.

2. The offensive arms were the sword and the javelin. The sword (*gladius*) was about two feet long, two-edged and pointed, intended rather for thrusting than for cutting. It hung by a bandolier (*balteus*) passing over the left shoulder, or from a body-belt (*cingulum*), and was carried on the right side so as not to be in the way of the shield, which was carried on the left arm. Officers, who had no shields, wore their swords on the left side. The javelin (*pilum*) was between six and seven feet long, and consisted of a wooden shaft and an iron head which was fitted and riveted into it. This iron head, when the javelin was hurled into any hard object, would bend, and the weapon would then be made useless for hurling back. The *pilum* weighed about nine pounds, and would carry a distance of from ninety to a hundred feet.

Clothing of the legionary soldiers. Instead of the toga was worn the more convenient *sagum* or *sagulum*, a thick woollen cloak or plaid, reaching to the knee and

fastened from the shoulder or round the neck with a brooch or buckle. Under this was a sleeveless tunic (*tunica*), also of wool. The feet were protected by *caligae*, hob-nailed leather boots, reaching half-way up the leg.

Pay and length of service. Caesar fixed the pay of the legionary at 225 denarii a year (about £8), the payment (*stipendium*) being made three times a year, with a small deduction for food and equipment. During the early days of the republic, citizens were bound to serve between the ages of seventeen and forty-six; after the time of Marius a soldier entered the army for twenty years; but the legionary could obtain his discharge after sixteen campaigns, the horseman after ten. The discharge after full service was called *missio honesta*, for ill-health *causaria*, and for misconduct *ignominiosa*. Time-expired men who served again voluntarily were called *evocati*; they were highly valued, and had special privileges and rewards. They held a higher rank than the common soldier, and were often promoted to be centurions.

The soldier's pack (sarcina). A Roman soldier on the march had to carry for himself everything he needed, so that the weight of his pack amounted to no less than 45 lb., and it was not without reason that he was said to be *impeditus*, encumbered, when carrying this load. Besides his armour, he had to carry a fortnight's supply of corn (sometimes more), several stakes (*valli*) for entrenchment purposes, a saw, basket, spade, hatchet, and cooking-vessel. All these were carried on a pole, or fastened to one of the stakes, over the left shoulder, while in the left hand were held the javelins, and on the left arm the shield, the helmet being hung on the breast. The *impedimenta*, the heavy baggage of the army, such as tents, military engines, and the like, were carried by baggage-animals, or in wagons. Before a battle the baggage was piled together (*sarcinas conferre*) and put in charge of a special guard (*praesidium*), and the soldier, when rid of his pack, was said to be *expeditus*, unencumbered.

The army on the march (agmen). The army when on the march was ordinarily arranged in single column, though, of course, the arrangement would vary according

to circumstances. With this formation there were three divisions, the van (*primum agmen*), the main body (*exercitus*, or *omnes copiae*), and the rear-guard (*agmen novissimum* or *extremum*). The van would have to reconnoitre the country and bring news of the enemy, and for this purpose were sent forward either special detachments (*exploratores*) or single scouts (*speculatores*). Another duty of the van was to select and make ready the place for the camp.

At a fixed distance behind the van marched the main body, and close after it the rear-guard. Each legion was immediately followed by its baggage, with the cavalry riding either on the flank or in the rear. This arrangement was only followed when there was no expectation of an attack by the enemy.

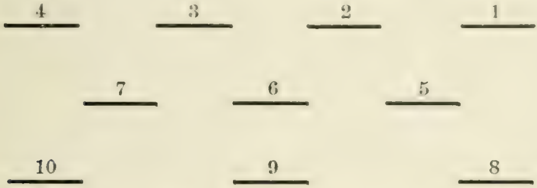
But where an attack was likely, the line of march was almost that of battle, into which it could easily be changed; Caesar calls it *triplex acies.* In this case the soldiers marched in three parallel columns beside each other, and if an attack were made, the columns, by deploying right and left, would find themselves in the usual battle array, with the baggage in the rear. But Caesar sometimes arranged the whole main body in front, then the whole of the baggage, and behind it a rear-guard.

Or, thirdly, the Romans formed a hollow square (*agmen quadratum*), with the baggage in the middle, when a sudden attack was expected.

An average day's march (*iustum iter*) seems to have been about fifteen miles; but in *B. G.* vii. 39 Caesar mentions a forced march (*magnum iter*) of three times that distance.

The order of battle (acies). Each legion was regularly drawn up in the triple formation (*triplex acies*), that is, of the ten cohorts in a legion four formed the first line, three the second, and three the third; between each cohort and the one next to it was left an interval equal in extent to the length of a cohort's front; behind these intervals were placed the cohorts of the second and the third lines respectively. Between each line and the one behind it was a distance equal to the frontage of a cohort. The men stood eight or ten deep, so that the cohort presented a front of between thirty and forty-five men, according to

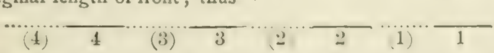
the number of men in a legion. The three lines formed the *quincunx* (like the figures on a die):



If several legions were engaged, they would be drawn up side by side in this formation. Cohorts 1, 2, 3, 4, would first engage the enemy, and if they failed to make an impression or tired, those numbered 5, 6, 7, would advance through the intervals and take their place, while the front four retired to reform and get breath. The third line was held in reserve, and only brought into action if or when the first two proved unsuccessful.[1] On either flank the auxiliaries (*alae*) were posted. When the charge was sounded, the legions advanced till within range (*intra teli iactum*), hurled a volley of javelins, and then drew the sword and engaged the enemy hand to hand.

The standards (signa). In the days of arrangement by maniples each maniple had its own *signum*, but after the time of Marius the *aquila* became the standard of the whole legion, and the *signa* were the standards of the different cohorts. The *aquila* consisted of an eagle, usually of silver, carried on the top of a wooden staff or pole, which was shod with iron so that it could be stuck in the ground. As

[1] Another and more plausible theory is that the cohorts only *advanced* in this formation, and that, before coming to close quarters with the enemy, the cohorts in the front rank extended until they had doubled their original length of front; thus—



The cohorts in the rear would also extend and form a continuous line of supports. The *quincunx* arrangement would be much more convenient for manœuvring purposes than a continuous line, but in actual battle the enemy would have poured in between the gaps and played havoc.

standard-bearer (*aquilifer*) was chosen the bravest and strongest of the centurions attached to the first cohort; over his helmet and armour he wore a bear's skin.

The *vexilla* were flags or banners, square pieces of red, white or purple cloth, which served as standards for the cavalry, and perhaps also for the auxiliaries; the bearer of the *vexillum* was called *vexillarius*.

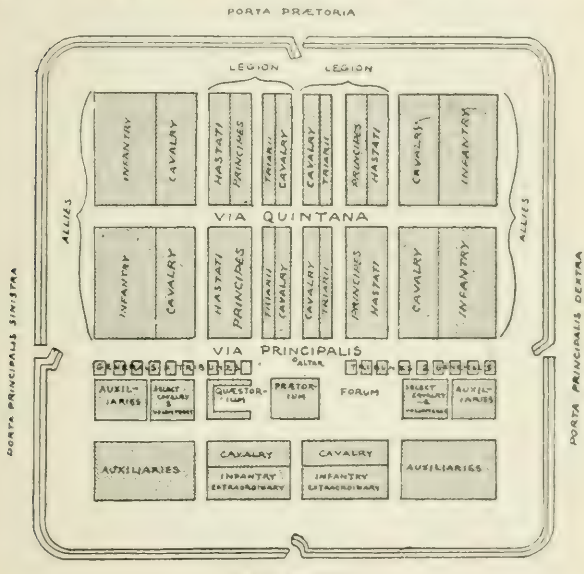
There was another *vexillum*, the flag of the general, a large red banner placed near his tent (*praetorium*), which, when displayed, was the signal for marching or battle. The importance of the *signa* is shown by the number of phrases in which the word occurs: e. g. *signa convellere*, *ferre*, *efferre*, *tollere*, to break up camp; *signa constituere*, to halt; *signa convertere*, to wheel about; *signa subsequi*, to keep in order of battle; *ab signis discedere*, to leave the ranks; *signa inferre*, to advance to the attack; *signa conferre cum*, to engage in battle; and so forth.

The camp. A Roman army never halted for a single night without forming a regular entrenchment (*castra*), big enough to hold all the fighting men, their beasts of burden, and the baggage. A camp occupied for any length of time was called *castra stativa*; such camps were *castra aestiva*, summer camps, or *castra hiberna*, winter camps. At the end of the day's march a detachment, usually of scouts and centurions, was sent forward to choose a suitable place which should be convenient for procuring water, wood, and forage, and afford no facilities for attack. The ground being chosen, the first business was to measure and stake out the camp, so that when the legions arrived they might each proceed to the space allotted them.

The camp was square in form, and the entire position was surrounded by a ditch (*fossa*) which was usually nine feet broad and seven deep, with an embankment (*agger*) on the inside of it, the top of which was defended by a strong fence of palisades (*vallum*).

The *porta praetoria* was in the front and the *porta decumana* at the back, farthest away from the enemy. At the sides of the camp were also two gates, *porta principalis dextra* and *porta principalis sinistra*, between which ran the main road, the *via principalis*, 100 feet wide. Parallel with

this was another street, called *via quintana*, fifty feet wide, dividing the upper part of the camp into equal parts. Between the *via principalis* and the *porta decumana* was the *praetorium*, a wide space containing the general's tent, the altars, and the *tribunal*, a bank of earth, from which the general addressed his men or administered justice. To the right of the *praetorium* was the *quaestorium*, a space allotted



PLAN OF A ROMAN CAMP.

to the quaestor and the commissariat stores: to the left the *forum*, a meeting-place for the soldiers.

Siege operations. There were three ways in which a town might be taken. (1) By means of sudden assault (*oppugnatio repentina*); in this case the enemy's trenches were filled up with earth, the gates broken in, and the walls pulled down or scaled with ladders. If this method of

attack failed, there was (2) the blockade (*obsidere, obsessio*), the object of which was to starve the defenders out by cutting off supplies. The town was surrounded by an inner and an outer wall (*circumvallatio*), the latter as a protection from attack on the part of a relieving force. (3) The third way was the regular siege (*oppugnatio*), in the case of strongly fortified places which could not be taken by either sudden attack or blockade. The principal work of a regular siege was the mound (*agger*). Made of earth and fascines (*crates*) held together at the sides by wooden scaffolding or stone walls, it was begun at some distance from the wall; and rose by a gradual ascent till on a level with the top of that part of the walls against which the attack was aimed.

Partly on the mound, partly on one side of it, were sometimes placed movable towers (*turres ambulatoriae*) brought up on wheels to the walls. These towers varied in height from 88 to 196 feet, and contained from ten to twenty stories (*tabulata*), the upper ones filled with artillery (*tormenta*). Besides the artillery, archers and slingers were posted on the outer galleries of the different stories, which were protected by breastworks, while in the lower stories sappers and miners were placed.

The aries. The battering-ram (*aries*) was the most effective instrument for making a breach in the walls of the besieged town. A stout beam, with a mass of iron at one end shaped like a ram's head, was hung by ropes on a horizontal beam, and swung backwards and forwards so as to loosen the stones of the wall. The loosened stones were picked out of the wall with wall-sickles (*falces murales*), while single holes were punched in the wall by the wall-borer (*terebra*), a ram with a sharp point, which was pushed forward on rollers. Another instrument of siege was the *tolleno*, a crane with a bucket or basket attached for hoisting the men on to the walls.

The besieged in their turn had various contrivances against these weapons of attack, such as two-pronged forks for overturning the scaling ladders, and cranes with tongs to seize the soldiers of the enemy and drop them within the town.

Protection for the besieging party was afforded by various contrivances:

(1) *Pluteï*, large standing shields, moving forward on wheels.

(2) *Vineae*, long sheds of light scaffolding, 8 feet high, 7 feet broad, and 16 feet long, with a roof of boards or wickerwork, and covered with the same at the sides, but open at the ends. The whole frame was covered with raw hides to prevent its being set on fire.

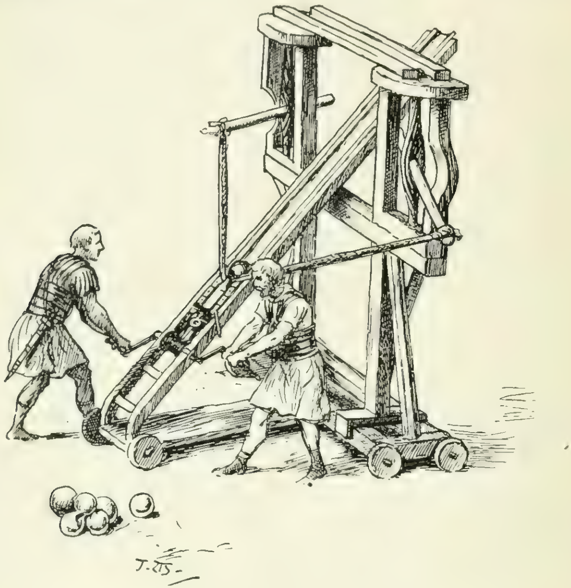
(3) *Musculus*, the mining-hut, a long narrow shed, stronger than the *vineae*, especially for the protection of the mining parties.

(4) *Testudo arietaria*, a shed of planks covered with hides (as a precaution against burning missiles) to protect the men while digging trenches and making their approaches to the walls, or for covering those who worked the battering-ram.

There was another kind of *testudo*, made by raising the shields over the head and shoulders, and fitting them closely under each other, so that the whole formed a compact covering like the shell of a tortoise,—whence the name. The soldiers in the first rank stood upright, those in the second stooped a little, and each line successively was a little lower than the one in front of it, till in the last the soldiers rested on one knee. The advantages of this sloping *testudo* were firstly, that stones and missiles rolled off it; secondly, that other soldiers could advance over it to attack the enemy upon the walls. The various kinds of *testudo* were met by throwing down masses of stone, pouring down molten lead or pitch, or by the use of burning arrows. The mound was met by countermining or setting it on fire; and against the towers the besieged would try fire, artillery discharged from the walls, or the erection of counter-towers.

Roman artillery. The general term for any kind of military engine which discharged missiles is *tormentum* (*torquere*, to twist): the impetus was produced by means of any elastic or twisted substance. *Tormenta* were of two kinds: *catapultae* or *scorpiones*, for discharging heavy darts and spears horizontally: and *ballistae*, which shot stones, beams or balls (up to about 160 lb. weight) at an angle of from 45 to 50 degrees. The average range of both was

about 400 yards, and they were repaired and kept in order by the *fabri.*



BALLISTA.

NOTE ON THE CALENDAR IN B. C. 49

CAESAR'S reformed Calendar came into operation in B. C. 45. Until then the normal year consisted of 355 days; of these March, May, July, and October each contained 31 days, February 28, and the remainder 29. In every second year, however, February (originally the last month of the year)[1] lost its last five days and ended with the Feast of the Terminalia on the 23rd; and in these years an extra month

[1] After B. C. 153 the consuls entered office on the first of January, and his month came to be regarded as the beginning of the year.

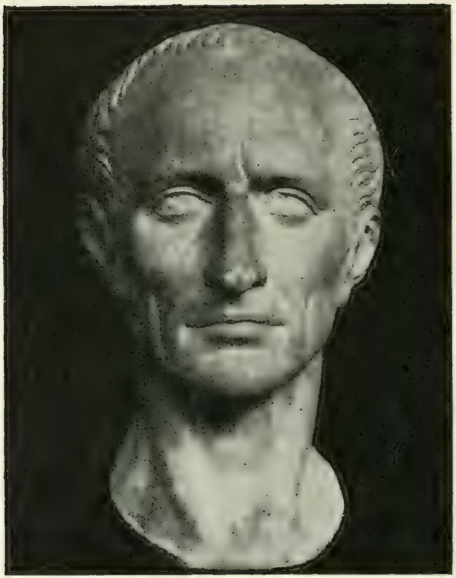
(*mensis Mercedonius* or *intercalaris*) of 27 and 28 days alternately was inserted before the 1st of March. By this means 45 (22 + 23) days were added to each period of four years, and the disagreement between the months and the seasons was approximately corrected. An intercalary month was due in B. C. 50, but (through causes arising from Curio's manœuvres on Caesar's behalf)[1] it was omitted. Consequently in 49 the months were on an average about 30 days in advance of the season: the equinox was in the latter half of April and the summer solstice in the latter half of July

This must be remembered in calculating the time and duration of the night-watches and of the hours of the day. The Romans divided the night from sunset to sunrise into 4 watches, and the day from sunrise to sunset into 12 hours, and both watches and hours differed in length at different times of the year, though the third watch always began at midnight, and the seventh hour at midday. Wherever watches or hours are referred to in the text the corresponding English time is given in the notes. It should be noted too that when a Roman spoke of an event as happening 'at the sixth hour' or 'before the eighth hour', he probably meant 'at the beginning of the sixth hour', 'before the beginning of the eighth hour'.

The whole arrangement of hours differing in length is very puzzling to a modern reader, but it appears to have worked in practice. At any rate the Romans by beginning the day at sunrise seem to have appreciated the advantages offered by the Daylight Saving Bill.

Time was measured by sun-dials (*solaria*) and water-clocks (*clepsydrae*). In the case of the latter (arranged on the principle of the hour-glass) wax was inserted or removed from the vessel containing the water according as the watches decreased or increased in duration. In the day-time hours seem usually to have been calculated roughly by the position of the sun.

[1] Ferrero, *The Greatness and Decline of Rome*, vol. ii, chap. x.



C. IVLIVS CAESAR. (From the bust in the British Museum.)

C. IVLI CAESARIS

COMMENTARIORVM

DE BELLO CIVILI

LIBER PRIMVS

Jan. 1, B.C. 49. *Caesar's ultimatum is delivered to the new consuls and read to the Senate.* Jan. 1 and 2. *Lentulus and Scipio urge strenuous opposition to his demands.*

. . . . LITTERIS Caesaris consulibus redditis 1
aegre ab his impetratum es summa tribunorum plebis
contentione, ut in senatu recitarentur; ut vero ex litteris
ad senatum referretur, impetrari non potuit. Referunt 2
consules de re publica. Incitat L. Lentulus consul sena-
tum: rei publicae se non defuturum pollicetur, si audacter
ac fortiter sententias dicere velint; sin Caesarem respiciant 3
atque eius gratiam sequantur, ut superioribus fecerint tem-
poribus, se sibi consilium capturum neque senatus auctori-
tati obtemperaturum: habere se quoque ad Caesaris gratiam
atque amicitiam receptum. In eandem sententiam loqui- 4
tur Scipio: Pompeio esse in animo rei publicae non
deesse, si senatus sequatur; si cunctetur atque agat lenius,
nequiquam eius auxilium, si postea velit, senatum implora-
turum.

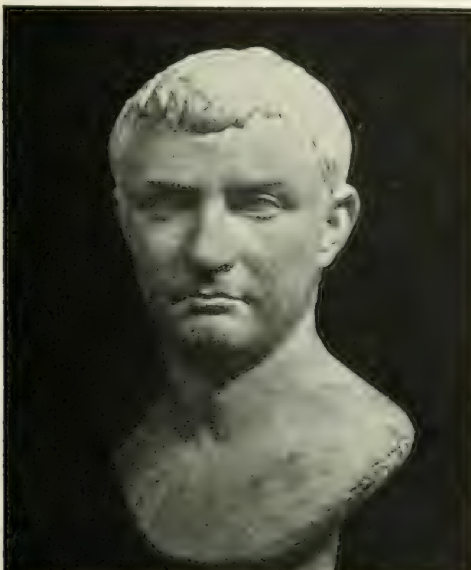
Lentulus had previously silenced the more moderate speakers. A resolution calling upon Caesar to disband his troops is adopted, but vetoed by two of the tribunes.

2 Haec Scipionis oratio, quod senatus in urbe habebatur
Pompeiusque aberat, ex ipsius ore Pompei mitti videbatur.
2 Dixerat aliquis leniorem sententiam, ut primo M. Marcellus,
ingressus in eam orationem, non oportere ante de ea re ad
senatum referri, quam dilectus tota Italia habiti et exercitus
conscripti essent, quo praesidio tutus libere senatus, quae
3 vellet, decernere auderet; ut M. Calidius, qui censebat, ut
Pompeius in suas provincias proficisceretur, ne qua esset
armorum causa: timere Caesarem ereptis ab eo duabus
legionibus, ne ad eius periculum reservare et retinere eas ad
4 urbem Pompeius videretur; ut M. Rufus, qui sententiam
5 Calidi paucis fere mutatis rebus sequebatur. Hi omnes
convicio L. Lentuli consulis correpti exagitabantur. Lentu-
lus sententiam Calidi pronuntiaturum se omnino negavit.
Marcellus perterritus conviciis a sua sententia discessit.
6 Sic vocibus consulis, terrore praesentis exercitus, minis
amicorum Pompei plerique compulsi inviti et coacti Sci-
pionis sententiam sequuntur: uti ante certam diem Caesar
7 exercitum dimittat; si non faciat, eum adversus rem
8 publicam facturum videri. Intercedit M. Antonius, Q.
Cassius, tribuni plebis. Refertur confestim de intercessione
tribunorum. Dicuntur sententiae graves; ut quisque
acerbissime crudelissimeque dixit, ita quam maxime ab
inimicis Caesaris collaudatur.

Jan. 2–7. *Pompey and his supporters prepare for war. Further negotiations with Caesar are suggested,*

3 Misso ad vesperum senatu omnes, qui sunt eius ordinis, a Pompeio evocantur. Laudat Pompeius promptos atque in posterum confirmat, segniores castigat atque in-

citat. Multi undique ex veteribus Pompei exercitibus spe 2
praemiorum atque ordinum evocantur, multi ex duabus
legionibus, quae sunt traditae a Caesare, arcessuntur. Com- 3
pletur urbs militibus, comitium tribunis, centurionibus,
evocatis. Omnes amici consulum, necessarii Pompei atque 4
ii, qui veteres inimicitias cum Caesare gerebant, in senatum



CN. POMPEIVS STRABO MAGNVS. (From the bust in the National Museum, Naples.)

coguntur; quorum vocibus et concursu terrentur infirmio- 5
res, dubii confirmantur, plerisque vero libere decernendi
potestas eripitur. Pollicetur L. Piso censor sese iturum ad 6
Caesarem, item L. Roscius praetor, qui de his rebus eum
doceant: sex dies ad eam rem conficiendam spati postu-

7 lant. Dicuntur etiam ab non nullis sententiae, ut legati ad Caesarem mittantur qui voluntatem senatus ei proponant.

but are frustrated by the Pompeian leaders. The motives which actuate Pompey and his supporters.

4 Omnibus his resistitur omnibusque oratio consulis, Sci-
2 pionis, Catonis opponitur. Catonem veteres inimicitiae Caesaris incitant et dolor repulsae. Lentulus aeris alieni magnitudine et spe exercitus ac provinciarum et regum appellandorum largitionibus movetur, seque alterum fore Sullam inter suos gloriatur, ad quem summa imperi redeat.
3 Scipionem eadem spes provinciae atque exercituum impellit, quos se pro necessitudine partiturum cum Pompeio arbitratur, simul iudiciorum metus atque ostentatio sui et adulatio potentium, qui in re publica iudiciisque tum pluri-
4 mum pollebant. Ipse Pompeius, ab inimicis Caesaris incitatus et quod neminem dignitate secum exaequari volebat, totum se ab eius amicitia averterat et cum communibus inimicis in gratiam redierat, quorum ipse maximam partem
5 illo adfinitatis tempore iniunxerat Caesari; simul infamia duarum legionum permotus, quas ab itinere Asiae Syriaeque ad suam potentiam dominatumque converterat, rem ad arma deduci studebat.

Jan. 7. *The 'senatus consultum ultimum' is passed. Antonius and Cassius are in danger of their lives, and leave Rome to join Caesar.*

5 His de causis aguntur omnia raptim atque turbate. Nec docendi Caesaris propinquis eius spatium datur nec tribunis plebis sui periculi deprecandi neque etiam extremi iuris intercessionis retinendi, quod L. Sulla reliquerat, facultas
2 tribuitur, sed de sua salute septimo die cogitare coguntur,

quod illi turbulentissimi superioribus temporibus tribuni
plebis octavo denique mense suarum actionum respicere
ac timere consuerant. Decurritur ad illud extremum atque 3
ultimum senatus consultum, quo nisi paene in ipso urbis
incendio atque in desperatione omnium salutis senatorum
audacia numquam ante descensum est: dent operam con-
sules, praetores, tribuni plebis quique pro consulibus sint
ad urbem, ne quid res publica detrimenti capiat. Haec 4
senatus consulta perscribuntur a. d. VII. Id. Ian. Itaque V



RAVENNA.

primis diebus, quibus haberi senatus potuit, quo ex die
consulatum iniit Lentulus, biduo excepto comitiali et de
imperio Caesaris et de amplissimis viris, tribunis plebis,
gravissime acerbissimeque decernitur. Profugiunt statim 5
ex urbe tribuni plebis seseque ad Caesarem conferunt. Is
eo tempore erat Ravennae exspectabatque suis lenissimis
postulatis responsa, si qua hominum aequitate res ad otium
deduci posset.

Jan. 8–10. *Pompey states his views to the Senate. Further measures and allotment of provinces. General disregard of customary procedure.*

6 Proximis diebus habetur extra urbem senatus. Pompeius
eadem illa, quae per Scipionem ostenderat, agit; senatus
2 virtutem constantiamque collaudat; copias suas exponit:
legiones habere sese paratas x; praeterea cognitum com-
pertumque sibi, alieno esse animo in Caesarem milites
neque iis posse persuaderi uti eum defendant aut sequantur
3 saltem. De reliquis rebus ad senatum refertur: tota Italia
dilectus habeatur; Faustus Sulla pro praetore in Maure-
taniam mittatur; pecunia uti ex aerario Pompeio detur.
4 Refertur etiam de rege Iuba, ut socius sit atque amicus;
Marcellus hoc se passurum in praesentia negat. De Fausto
5 impedit Philippus, tribunus plebis. De reliquis rebus
senatus consulta perscribuntur. Provinciae privatis de-
cernuntur, duae consulares, reliquae praetoriae. Scipioni
obvenit Syria, L. Domitio Gallia. Philippus et Cotta
privato consilio praetereuntur, neque eorum sortes deiciuntur.
6 In reliquas provincias praetores mittuntur. Neque ex-
spectant, quod superioribus annis acciderat, ut de eorum
imperio ad populum feratur, paludatique votis nuncupatis
7 exeunt. Consules ex urbe proficiscuntur, quod ante id
tempus accidit numquam, lictoresque habent in urbe et
8 Capitolio privati contra omnia vetustatis exempla. Tota
Italia dilectus habentur, arma imperantur, pecuniae a muni-
cipiis exiguntur, e fanis tolluntur, omnia divina humanaque
iura permiscentur.

Jan. 11. *Caesar at Ravenna hears of the 'senatus consultum ultimum', and appeals to the thirteenth legion. He will champion the rights of the tribunes.*

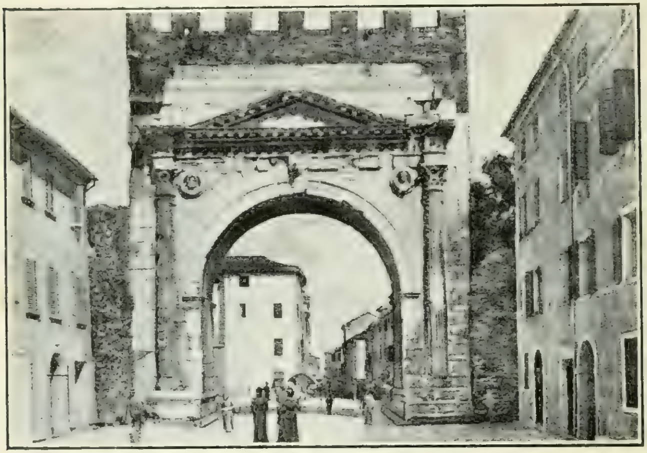
7 Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar apud milites contionatur.
Omnium temporum iniurias inimicorum in se commemorat;

a quibus deductum ac depravatum Pompeium queritur
invidia atque obtrectatione laudis suae, cuius ipse honori
et dignitati semper faverit adiutorque fuerit. Novum in 2
re publica introductum exemplum queritur, ut tribunicia
intercessio armis notaretur atque opprimeretur [quae
superioribus annis armis esset restituta]. Sullam nudata 3
omnibus rebus tribunicia potestate tamen intercessionem
liberam reliquisse; Pompeium, qui amissa restituisse 4
videatur bona, etiam quae ante habuerint ademisse. Quo- 5
tienscumque sit decretum, darent operam magistratus, ne
quid res publica detrimenti caperet (qua voce et quo
senatus consulto populus Romanus ad arma sit vocatus),
factum in perniciosis legibus, in vi tribunicia, in secessione
populi templis locisque editioribus occupatis; atque haec
superioris aetatis exempla expiata Saturnini atque Grac-
chorum casibus docet. Quarum rerum illo tempore nihil
factum, ne cogitatum quidem. Hortatur, cuius imperatoris 6
ductu VIIII annis rem publicam felicissime gesserint pluri-
maque proelia secunda fecerint, omnem Galliam Germa-
niamque pacaverint, ut eius existimationem dignitatemque
ab inimicis defendant. Conclamant legionis XIII., quae 7
aderat, milites (hanc enim initio tumultus evocaverat; reli-
quae nondum convenerant): sese paratos esse imperatoris
sui tribunorumque plebis iniurias defendere.

Jan. 11 and 12. *Caesar crosses the frontier and reaches Ariminum, where, on* Jan. 17, *messengers from Pompey reach him.*

Cognita militum voluntate Ariminum cum ea legione **8**
proficiscitur ibique tribunos plebis, qui ad eum confugerant,
convenit; reliquas legiones ex hibernis evocat et subsequi
iubet. Eo L. Caesar adulescens venit, cuius pater Caesaris 2
erat legatus. Is reliquo sermone confecto, cuius rei causa

venerat, habere se a Pompeio ad eum privati offici mandata demonstrat: velle Pompeium se Caesari purgatum,
3 ne ea, quae rei publicae causa egerit, in suam contumeliam vertat. Semper se rei publicae commoda privatis necessitudinibus habuisse potiora. Caesarem quoque pro sua dignitate debere et studium et iracundiam suam rei publicae



Arco d'Augusto, Rimini.

dimittere neque adeo graviter irasci inimicis, ut, cum illis nocere se speret, rei publicae noceat. Pauca eiusdem
4 generis addit cum excusatione Pompei coniuncta. Eadem fere atque isdem verbis praetor Roscius agit cum Caesare sibique Pompeium commemorasse demonstrat.

Jan. 19. *Caesar sends the messengers back to Pompey with proposals for a peaceable settlement.*

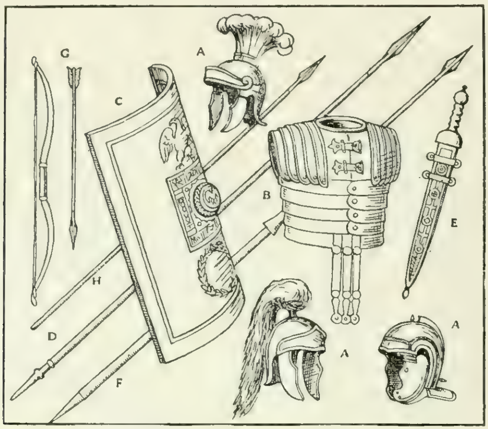
9 Quae res etsi nihil ad levandas iniurias pertinere videbantur, tamen idoneos nactus homines, per quos ea, quae

vellet, ad eum perferrentur, petit ab utroque, quoniam Pompei mandata ad se detulerint, ne graventur sua quoque ad eum postulata deferre, si parvo labore magnas controversias tollere atque omnem Italiam metu liberare possint.
Sibi semper primam fuisse dignitatem vitaque potiorem: 2
doluisse se, quod populi Romani beneficium sibi per contumeliam ab inimicis extorqueretur, ereptoque semestri imperio in urbem retraheretur, cuius absentis rationem
haberi proximis comitiis populus iussisset. Tamen hanc 3
iacturam honoris sui rei publicae causa aequo animo tulisse. Cum litteras ad senatum miserit, ut omnes ab
exercitibus discederent, ne id quidem impetravisse. Tota 4
Italia dilectus haberi, retineri legiones II, quae ab se simulatione Parthici belli sint abductae, civitatem esse in armis. Quonam haec omnia nisi ad suam perniciem
pertinere? Sed tamen ad omnia se descendere paratum 5
atque omnia pati rei publicae causa. Proficiscatur Pompeius in suas provincias, ipsi exercitus dimittant, discedant in Italia omnes ab armis, metus e civitate tollatur, libera comitia atque omnis res publica senatui populoque Romano
permittatur. Haec quo facilius certisque condicionibus 6
fiant et iure iurando sanciantur, aut ipse propius accedat aut se patiatur accedere; fore uti per colloquia omnes controversiae componantur.

Jan. 23. *Pompey rejects these proposals and makes impossible demands.*

Acceptis mandatis Roscius cum Caesare Capuam per- **10**
venit ibique consules Pompeiumque invenit: postulata
Caesaris renuntiat. Illi re deliberata respondent scriptaque 2
ad eum mandata per eosdem remittunt; quorum haec erat 3
summa: Caesar in Galliam reverteretur, Arimino excederet, exercitus dimitteret; quae si fecisset, Pompeium in

4 Hispanias iturum. Interea, quoad fides esset data Caesarem facturum quae polliceretur, non intermissuros consules Pompeiumque dilectus.

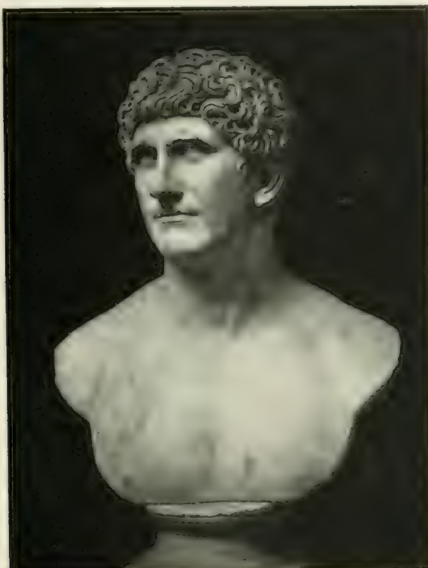


ROMAN ARMS AND ARMOUR.
AAA. Galeae. B. Lorica. C. Scutum. D. Hasta. E. Gladius. F. Pilum. G. Arcus and Sagitta. H. Telum.

The unfair character of these demands. Jan. 12–15. *Caesar dispatches troops to occupy several neighbouring towns.*

11 Erat iniqua condicio postulare, ut Caesar Arimino excederet atque in provinciam reverteretur, ipsum et provincias et legiones alienas tenere; exercitum Caesaris velle
2 dimitti, dilectus habere; polliceri se in provinciam iturum neque ante quem diem iturus esset definire, ut, si peracto consulatu Caesaris non profectus esset, nulla tamen
3 mendaci religione obstrictus videretur. Tempus vero colloquio non dare neque se accessurum polliceri magnam
4 pacis desperationem adferebat. Itaque ab Arimino M.

Antonium cum cohortibus quinque Arretium mittit: ipse Arimini cum duabus [legionibus] subsistit ibique dilectum habere instituit; Pisaurum, Fanum, Anconam singulis cohortibus occupat.

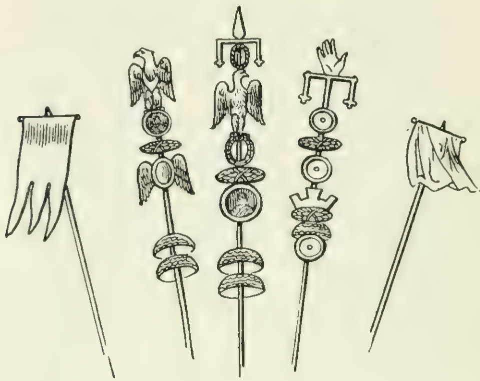


M. ANTONIVS. (From the bust in the Vatican.)

Jan. 20. *Curio occupies Iguvium for Caesar.* Jan. 21–Feb. 2. *Caesar concentrates his scattered forces and advances on Auximum.*

Interea certior factus Iguvium Thermum praetorem **12**
cohortibus v tenere, oppidum munire, omniumque esse
Iguvinorum optimam erga se voluntatem, Curionem cum
tribus cohortibus, quas Pisauri et Arimini habebat, mittit.

2 Cuius adventu cognito, diffisus municipi voluntati Thermus cohortes ex urbe educit et profugit. Milites in itinere ab eo discedunt ac domum revertuntur. Curio summa omnium
3 voluntate Iguvium recipit. Quibus rebus cognitis confisus



Signa and Vexilla.

municipiorum voluntatibus Caesar cohortes legionis XIII. ex praesidiis deducit Auximumque proficiscitur; quod oppidum Attius cohortibus tribus introductis tenebat dilectumque toto Piceno circummissis senatoribus habebat.

Feb. 3. *The Pompeian garrison evacuates Auximum, and the town welcomes Caesar.*

13 Adventu Caesaris cognito decuriones Auximi ad Attium Varum frequentes conveniunt: docent sui iudici rem non esse; neque se neque reliquos municipes pati posse C. Caesarem imperatorem bene de re publica meritum tantis rebus gestis oppido moenibusque prohiberi; proinde habeat
2 rationem posteritatis et periculi sui. Quorum oratione

permotus Varus praesidium, quod introduxerat, ex oppido
educit ac profugit. Hunc ex primo ordine pauci Caesaris 3
consecuti milites consistere coegerunt. Commisso proelio 4
deseritur a suis Varus; non nulla pars militum domum
discedit; reliqui ad Caesarem perveniunt, atque una cum
iis deprensus L. Pupius, primi pili centurio, adducitur, qui
hunc eundem ordinem in exercitu Cn. Pompei antea
duxerat. Caesar milites Attianos collaudat, Pupium dimittit, 5
Auximatibus agit gratias seque eorum facti memorem fore
pollicetur.

Panic at Rome. Pompey (Jan. 17) *and the chief magistrates* (Jan. 18) *leave Rome for Campania. Levies are organized near Capua.*

Quibus rebus Romam nuntiatis tantus repente terror **14**
invasit, ut, cum Lentulus consul ad aperiendum aerarium
venisset ad pecuniamque Pompeio ex senatus consulto
proferendam, protinus non aperto sanctiore aerario ex urbe
profugeret. Caesar enim adventare iam iamque et adesse
eius equites falso nuntiabantur. Hunc Marcellus collega et 2
plerique magistratus consecuti sunt. Cn. Pompeius pridie 3
eius diei ex urbe profectus iter ad legiones habebat, quas a
Caesare acceptas in Apulia hibernorum causa disposuerat.
Dilectus circa urbem intermittuntur: nihil citra Capuam 4
tutum esse omnibus videtur. Capuae primum sese con-
firmant et colligunt, dilectumque colonorum, qui lege Iulia
Capuam deducti erant, habere instituunt; gladiatoresque,
quos ibi Caesar in ludo habebat, ad forum productos
Lentulus spe libertatis confirmat atque iis equos attribuit et
se sequi iussit; quos postea monitus ab suis, quod ea res 5
omnium iudicio reprehendebatur, circum familias conventus
Campani custodiae causa distribuit.

Feb. 4. *Caesar advances south from Auximum and is joined* (Feb. 5) *by the twelfth legion.* Feb. 8. *Vibullius and Domitius concentrate Pompeian troops at Corfinium.*

15 Auximo Caesar progressus omnem agrum Picenum
percurrit. Cunctae earum regionum praefecturae libentissi-
mis animis eum recipiunt exercitumque eius omnibus rebus
2 iuvant. Etiam Cingulo, quod oppidum Labienus con-
stituerat suaque pecunia exaedificaverat, ad eum legati
veniunt quaeque imperaverit se cupidissime facturos polli-
centur. Milites imperat: mittunt. Interea legio XII.
3 Caesarem consequitur. Cum his duabus Asculum Picenum
proficiscitur. Id oppidum Lentulus Spinther X cohortibus
tenebat; qui Caesaris adventu cognito profugit ex oppido
cohortesque secum abducere conatus a magna parte mili-
4 tum deseritur. Relictus in itinere cum paucis incidit in
Vibullium Rufum missum a Pompeio in agrum Picenum
confirmandorum hominum causa. A quo factus Vibullius
certior, quae res in Piceno gererentur, milites ab eo accipit,
5 ipsum dimittit. Item ex finitimis regionibus quas potest
contrahit cohortes ex dilectibus Pompeianis; in his
Camerino fugientem Lucilium Hirrum cum sex cohortibus,
quas ibi in praesidio habuerat, excipit; quibus coactis XIII
6 efficit. Cum his ad Domitium Ahenobarbum Corfinium
magnis itineribus pervenit Caesaremque adesse cum legioni-
7 bus duabus nuntiat. Domitius per se circiter XX cohortes
Alba et ex Marsis et Paelignis finitimisque regionibus
coegerat.

Feb. 15. *Caesar arrives outside Corfinium.*

16 Recepto Firmo expulsoque Lentulo Caesar conquiri
milites, qui ab eo discesserant, dilectumque institui iubet;
ipse unum diem ibi rei frumentariae causa moratus Cor-
2 finium contendit. Eo cum venisset, cohortes V praemissae

a Domitio ex oppido pontem fluminis interrumpebant, qui
erat ab oppido milia passuum circiter III. Ibi cum ante- 3
cursoribus Caesaris proelio commisso celeriter Domitiani
a ponte repulsi se in oppidum receperunt. Caesar legioni- 4
bus traductis ad oppidum constitit iuxtaque murum castra
posuit.

Feb. 15. *Domitius sends to Pompey to ask for help. Preparations for the defence of Corfinium.*

Re cognita Domitius ad Pompeium in Apuliam peritos **17**
regionum magno proposito praemio cum litteris mittit, qui
petant atque orent, ut sibi subveniat: Caesarem duobus
exercitibus et locorum angustiis facile intercludi posse
frumentoque prohiberi. Quod nisi fecerit, se cohortesque 2
amplius XXX magnumque numerum senatorum atque
equitum Romanorum in periculum esse venturum. Interim 3
suos cohortatus tormenta in muris disponit certasque
cuique partes ad custodiam urbis attribuit: militibus in 4
contione agros ex suis possessionibus pollicetur, quaterna
in singulos iugera et pro rata parte centurionibus evoca-
tisque.

Feb. 16. *Sulmo surrenders to Antonius.* Feb. 17. *Caesar is joined by the eighth legion and other troops: he proceeds to invest Corfinium.*

Interim Caesari nuntiatur Sulmonenses, quod oppidum **18**
a Corfinio VII milium intervallo abest, cupere ea facere,
quae vellet, sed a Q. Lucretio senatore et Attio Paeligno
prohiberi, qui id oppidum VII cohortium praesidio tenebant.
Mittit eo M. Antonium cum legionis XIII. cohortibus V. 2
Sulmonenses, simul atque signa nostra viderunt, portas
aperuerunt universique, et oppidani et milites, obviam
gratulantes Antonio exierunt. Lucretius et Attius de 3
muro se deiecerunt. Attius ad Antonium deductus petit

ut ad Caesarem mitteretur. Antonius cum cohortibus et
4 Attio eodem die, quo profectus erat, revertitur. Caesar eas cohortes cum exercitu suo coniunxit Attiumque incolumem dimisit. Caesar primis diebus castra magnis operibus munire et ex finitimis municipiis frumentum comportare
5 reliquasque copias exspectare instituit. Eo triduo legio VIII. ad eum venit cohortesque ex novis Galliae dilectibus XXII equitesque ab rege Norico circiter CCC. Quorum adventu altera castra ad alteram oppidi partem ponit: his
6 castris Curionem praefecit. Reliquis diebus oppidum vallo castellisque circummunire instituit. Cuius operis maxima parte effecta eodem fere tempore missi ad Pompeium revertuntur.

Feb. 19. *Pompey's answer, refusing help, reaches Domitius: he conceals the bad news and prepares to escape.*

19 Litteris perlectis Domitius dissimulans in consilio pronuntiat Pompeium celeriter subsidio venturum hortaturque eos, ne animo deficiant quaeque usui ad defendendum
2 oppidum sint parent. Ipse arcano cum paucis familiaribus suis colloquitur consiliumque fugae capere constituit. Cum vultus Domiti cum oratione non consentiret atque omnia trepidantius timidiusque ageret, quam superioribus diebus consuesset, multumque cum suis consiliandi causa secreto praeter consuetudinem colloqueretur, concilia conventusque hominum fugeret, res diutius tegi dissimularique
3 non potuit. Pompeius enim rescripserat: sese rem in summum periculum deducturum non esse, neque suo consilio aut voluntate Domitium se in oppidum Corfinium
4 contulisse; proinde, si qua fuisset facultas, ad se cum omnibus copiis veniret. Id ne fieri posset, obsidione atque oppidi circummunitione fiebat.

Feb. 19–20. *Dissension in Corfinium: the troops and citizens arrest Domitius and promise to open the gates to Caesar.*

Divulgato Domiti consilio milites, qui erant Corfini, **20** primo vespere secessionem faciunt atque ita inter se per tribunos militum centurionesque atque honestissimos sui



TOMB OF A CENTURION. (From the Colchester Museum.)
Copyright, A. J. Wright.] [*Photo, Gill, Colchester.*

generis colloquuntur: obsideri se a Caesare, opera muni- 2
tionesque prope esse perfectas; ducem suum Domitium, cuius spe atque fiducia permanserint, proiectis omnibus fugae consilium capere: debere se suae salutis rationem habere. Ab his primo Marsi dissentire incipiunt eamque 3
oppidi partem, quae munitissima videretur, occupant,

4 tantaque inter eos dissensio exsistit, ut manum conserere atque armis dimicare conentur; post paulo tamen internuntiis ultro citroque missis quae ignorabant, de L. Domiti
5 fuga, cognoscunt. Itaque omnes uno consilio Domitium productum in publicum circumsistunt et custodiunt legatosque ex suo numero ad Caesarem mittunt: sese paratos esse portas aperire quaeque imperaverit facere et L. Domitium vivum in eius potestatem tradere.

Feb. 20. *Caesar determines to enter on the following morning: his precautions during the night.*

21 Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar etsi magni interesse arbitrabatur quam primum oppido potiri cohortesque ad se in castra traducere, ne qua aut largitionibus aut animi confirmatione aut falsis nuntiis commutatio fieret voluntatis, quod saepe in bello parvis momentis magni casus inter-
2 cederent, tamen veritus ne militum introitu et nocturni temporis licentia oppidum diriperetur, eos qui venerant collaudat atque in oppidum remittit, portas murosque
3 asservari iubet. Ipse in iis operibus, quae facere instituerat, milites disponit non certis spatiis intermissis, ut erat superiorum dierum consuetudo, sed perpetuis vigiliis stationibusque, ut contingant inter se atque omnem munitionem expleant;
4 tribunos militum et praefectos circummittit atque hortatur, non solum ab eruptionibus caveant, sed etiam singulorum
5 hominum occultos exitus asservent. Neque vero tam remisso ac languido animo quisquam omnium fuit, qui ea
6 nocte conquieverit: tanta erat summae rerum exspectatio, ut alius in aliam partem mente atque animo traheretur, quid ipsis Corfiniensibus, quid Domitio, quid Lentulo, quid reliquis accideret, qui quosque eventus exciperent.

Feb. 21. *Lentulus Spinther is granted an audience by Caesar.*

22 Quarta vigilia circiter Lentulus Spinther de muro cum

vigiliis custodiisque nostris colloquitur: velle se, si sibi fiat
potestas, Caesarem convenire. Facta potestate ex oppido 2
mittitur, neque ab eo prius Domitiani milites discedunt,
quam in conspectum Caesaris deducatur. Cum eo de 3
salute sua ~~agit:~~ orat atque obsecrat ut sibi parcat veterem-
que amicitiam commemorat Caesarisque in se beneficia
exponit, quae erant maxima: quod per eum in collegium 4
pontificum venerat, quod provinciam Hispaniam ex prae-
tura habuerat, quod in petitione consulatus erat sublevatus.
Cuius orationem Caesar interpellat: se non malefici causa 5
ex provincia egressum, sed uti se a contumeliis inimico-
rum defenderet, ut tribunos plebis nefarie ex civitate ex-
pulsos in suam dignitatem restitueret, ut se et populum
Romanum factione paucorum oppressum in libertatem
vindicaret. Cuius oratione confirmatus Lentulus ut in 6
oppidum reverti liceat petit: quod de sua salute impetra-
verit, fore etiam reliquis ad suam spem solacio: adeo esse
perterritos non nullos, ut suae vitae durius consulere cogi-
tent. Facta potestate discedit.

Feb. 21. *Capitulation of Corfinium. Caesar starts for the South.*

Caesar, ubi luxit, omnes senatores senatorumque liberos, **23**
tribunos militum equitesque Romanos ad se produci iubet.
Erant quinque ordinis senatorii L. Domitius, P. Lentulus 2
Spinther, L. Caecilius Rufus, Sex. Quintilius Varus quae-
stor, L. Rubrius; praeterea filius Domiti aliique com-
plures adulescentes et magnus numerus equitum Romano-
rum et decurionum, quos ex municipiis Domitius evo-
caverat. Hos omnes productos a contumeliis militum 3
conviciisque prohibet; pauca apud eos loquitur: queritur,
quod sibi a parte eorum gratia relata non sit pro suis in eos
maximis beneficiis; dimittit omnes incolumes. HS lx, 4

quod advexerat Domitius atque in publico deposuerat, alla-
tum ad se a quattuorviris Corfiniensibus Domitio reddit,
ne continentior in vita hominum quam in pecunia fuisse
videatur, etsi eam pecuniam publicam esse constabat
5 datamque a Pompeio in stipendium. Milites Domi-
tianos sacramentum apud se dicere iubet atque eodem die
castra movet iustumque iter conficit VII omnino dies ad
Corfinium commoratus et per fines Marrucinorum, Frenta-
norum, Larinatium in Apuliam pervenit.

Pompey leaves Luceria (Feb. 18) *and marches to Brundisium where he arrives on* Feb. 25. *Various troops desert to Caesar, who sends a further message to Pompey, asking for an interview.*

24 Pompeius his rebus cognitis, quae erant ad Corfinium
gestae, Luceria proficiscitur Canusium atque inde Brundi-
2 sium. Copias undique omnes ex novis dilectibus ad se
cogi iubet; servos, pastores armat atque iis equos attribuit:
3 ex his circiter CCC equites conficit. L. Manlius praetor
Alba cum cohortibus sex profugit, Rutilius Lupus praetor
Tarracina cum tribus; quae procul equitatum Caesaris
conspicatae, cui praeerat Vibius Curius, relictis praetoribus
4 signa ad Curium transferunt atque ad eum transeunt. Item
reliquis itineribus non nullae cohortes in agmen Caesaris,
aliae in equites incidunt. Deducitur ad eum deprensus ex
itinere N. Magius Cremona, praefectus fabrum Cn. Pompei.
5 Quem Caesar ad eum remittit cum mandatis: quoniam ad
id tempus facultas colloquendi non fuerit atque ipse Brundi-
sium sit venturus, interesse rei publicae et communis salutis
6 se cum Pompeio colloqui; neque vero idem profici, longo
itineris spatio cum per alios condiciones ferantur, ac si
coram de omnibus condicionibus disceptetur.

March 9. *Caesar with six legions reaches Brundisium, and finds that most of Pompey's troops have sailed for Dyrrachium. He begins operations for blocking the harbour.*

His datis mandatis Brundisium cum legionibus VI per- 25
venit, veteranis III et reliquis, quas ex novo dilectu con-
fecerat atque in itinere compleverat; Domitianas enim 2
cohortes protinus a Corfinio in Siciliam miserat. Repperit
consules Dyrrachium profectos cum magna parte exercitus,
Pompeium remanere Brundisi cum cohortibus XX: neque 3
certum inveniri poterat, obtinendine Brundisi causa ibi
remansisset, quo facilius omne Hadriaticum mare ex ultimis
Italiae partibus regionibusque Graeciae in potestate haberet
atque ex utraque parte bellum administrare posset, an inopia
navium ibi restitisset; veritusque, ne ille Italiam dimitten- 4
dam non existimaret, exitus administrationesque Brundisini
portus impedire instituit. Quorum operum haec erat ratio.
Qua fauces erant angustissimae portus, moles atque aggerem 5
ab utraque parte litoris iaciebat, quod his locis erat vadosum
mare. Longius progressus, cum agger altiore aqua contineri 6
non posset, rates duplices quoquo versus pedum XXX e
regione molis collocabat. Has quaternis ancoris ex IIII 7
angulis destinabat, ne fluctibus moverentur. His perfectis 8
collocatisque alias deinceps pari magnitudine rates iunge-
bat. Has terra atque aggere integebat, ne aditus atque 9
incursus ad defendendum impediretur; a fronte atque ab
utroque latere cratibus ac pluteis protegebat; in quarta 10
quaque earum turres binorum tabulatorum excitabat, quo
commodius ab impetu navium incendiisque defenderet.

March 9–17. *Pompey's counter-works. Caesar again vainly asks for an interview, and finally concludes that war is inevitable.*

Contra haec Pompeius naves magnas onerarias, quas in 26
portu Brundisino deprenderat, adornabat. Ibi turres cum

ternis tabulatis erigebat easque multis tormentis et omni genere telorum completas ad opera Caesaris appellebat, ut rates perrumperet atque opera disturbaret. Sic cotidie utrimque eminus fundis, sagittis reliquisque telis pugna-
2 batur. Atque haec Caesar ita administrabat, ut condiciones pacis dimittendas non existimaret; ac tametsi magnopere admirabatur Magium, quem ad Pompeium cum mandatis miserat, ad se non remitti, atque ea res saepe temptata etsi impetus eius consiliaque tardabat, tamen omnibus rebus in



Brindisi.

3 eo perseverandum putabat. Itaque Caninium Rebilum legatum, familiarem necessariumque Scriboni Libonis, mittit ad eum colloqui causa. Mandat, ut Libonem de conciliandi pace hortetur; imprimis, ut ipse cum Pompeio
4 colloqueretur, postulat: magnopere sese confidere demonstrat, si eius rei sit potestas facta, fore ut aequis condicionibus ab armis discedatur; cuius rei magnam partem laudis atque existimationis ad Libonem perventuram, si
5 illo auctore atque agente ab armis sit discessum. Libo a

colloquio Canini digressus ad Pompeium proficiscitur.
Paulo post renuntiat, quod consules absint, sine illis non
posse agi de compositione. Ita saepius rem frustra tempta- 6
tam Caesar aliquando dimittendam sibi iudicat et de bello
agendum.

March 17. *Pompey's ships return from Dyrrachium and he prepares to embark.*

Prope dimidia parte operis a Caesare effecta diebusque 27
in ea re consumptis VIIII naves a consulibus Dyrrachio
remissae, quae priorem partem exercitus eo deportaverant,
Brundisium revertuntur. Pompeius, sive operibus Caesaris 2
permotus sive etiam quod ab initio Italia excedere con-
stituerat, adventu navium profectionem parare incipit et,
quo facilius impetum Caesaris tardaret, ne sub ipsa pro- 3
fectione milites in oppidum irrumperent, portas obstruit,
vicos plateasque inaedificat, fossas transversas viis praeducit
atque ibi sudes stipitesque praeacutos defigit. Haec levi- 4
bus cratibus terraque inaequat; aditus autem atque itinera
duo, quae extra murum ad portum ferebant, maximis defixis
trabibus atque iis praeacutis praesaepit. His paratis rebus 5
milites silentio naves conscendere iubet, expeditos autem
ex evocatis, sagittarios funditoresque raros in muro turri-
busque disponit. Hos certo signo revocare constituit, cum 6
omnes milites naves conscendissent, atque iis expedito loco
actuaria navigia relinquit.

March 17. *Pompey and his troops escape from Brundisium: two ships are captured by Caesar.*

Brundisini Pompeianorum militum iniuriis atque ipsius 28
Pompei contumeliis permoti Caesaris rebus favebant.
Itaque cognita Pompei profectione concursantibus illis 2
atque in ea re occupatis vulgo ex tectis significabant. Per

quos re cognita Caesar scalas parari militesque armari iubet,
3 ne quam rei gerendae facultatem dimittat. Pompeius sub noctem naves solvit. Qui erant in muro custodiae causa collocati, eo signo, quod convenerat, revocantur notisque
4 itineribus ad naves decurrunt. Milites positis scalis muros ascendunt, sed moniti a Brundisinis, ut vallum caecum fossasque caveant, subsistunt et longo itinere ab his circumducti ad portum perveniunt duasque naves cum militibus, quae ad moles Caesaris adhaeserant, scaphis lintribusque reprehendunt, reprehensas excipiunt.

March 17. *Caesar determines to abandon the pursuit.*

29 Caesar, etsi ad spem conficiendi negoti maxime probabat coactis navibus mare transire et Pompeium sequi, prius quam ille sese transmarinis auxiliis confirmaret, tamen eius rei moram temporisque longinquitatem timebat, quod omnibus coactis navibus Pompeius praesentem facultatem
2 insequendi sui ademerat. Relinquebatur ut ex longinquioribus regionibus Galliae Picenique et a freto naves essent exspectandae. Id propter anni tempus longum atque impe-
3 ditum videbatur. Interea veterem exercitum, duas Hispanias confirmari, quarum erat altera maximis beneficiis Pompei devincta, auxilia, equitatum parari, Galliam Italiamque temptari se absente nolebat.

Caesar sends officers to occupy Sardinia and Sicily. The Pompeian governors evacuate those provinces (April and May).

30 Itaque in praesentia Pompei sequendi rationem omittit, in Hispaniam proficisci constituit: duumviris municipiorum omnium imperat ut naves conquirant Brundisiumque de-
2 ducendas curent. Mittit in Sardiniam cum legione una Valerium legatum, in Siciliam Curionem pro praetore cum

legionibus III; eundem, cum Siciliam recepisset, protinus
in Africam traducere exercitum iubet. Sardiniam obtinebat
M. Cotta, Siciliam M. Cato, Africam sorte Tubero obtinere
debebat. Caralitani, simul ad se Valerium mitti audierunt, 2
nondum profecto ex Italia sua sponte Cottam ex oppido
eiciunt. Ille perterritus, quod omnem provinciam con-
sentire intellegebat, ex Sardinia in Africam profugit. Cato 3
in Sicilia naves longas veteres reficiebat, novas civitatibus
imperabat. Haec magno studio agebat. In Lucanis
Bruttiisque per legatos suos civium Romanorum dilectus
habebat, equitum peditumque certum numerum a civitati-
bus Siciliae exigebat. Quibus rebus paene perfectis adventu 5
Curionis cognito queritur in contione sese proiectum ac
proditum a Cn. Pompeio, qui omnibus rebus imparatissimis
non necessarium bellum suscepisset et ab se reliquisque in
senatu interrogatus omnia sibi esse ad bellum apta ac parata
confirmavisset. Haec in contione questus ex provincia
fugit.

The situation in Africa (March and April).

Nacti vacuas ab imperiis Sardiniam Valerius, Curio Si- **31**
ciliam cum exercitibus eo perveniunt. Tubero, cum in 2
Africam venisset, invenit in provincia cum imperio Attium
Varum; qui ad Auximum, ut supra demonstravimus,
amissis cohortibus protinus ex fuga in Africam pervenerat
atque eam sua sponte vacuam occupaverat dilectuque habito
duas legiones effecerat, hominum et locorum notitia et usu
eius provinciae nactus aditus ad ea conanda, quod paucis
ante annis ex praetura eam provinciam obtinuerat. Hic 3
venientem Uticam navibus Tuberonem portu atque oppido
prohibet neque adfectum valetudine filium exponere in
terra patitur, sed sublatis ancoris excedere eo loco cogit.

Caesar leaves Brundisium (March 18) *and reaches Rome* (March 31). *His speech to the Senate* (April 1). *He asks for their support in carrying on the government and proposes that envoys should be sent to Pompey.*

32 His rebus confectis Caesar, ut reliquum tempus a labore intermitteretur, milites in proxima municipia deducit; ipse
2 ad urbem proficiscitur. Coacto senatu iniurias inimicorum commemorat. Docet se nullum extraordinarium honorem



THE ROMAN FORUM.

appetisse, sed exspectato legitimo tempore consulatus eo
3 fuisse contentum, quod omnibus civibus pateret. Latum ab x tribunis plebis contra dicentibus inimicis, Catone vero acerrime repugnante et pristina consuetudine dicendi mora dies extrahente, ut sui ratio absentis haberetur, ipso consule Pompeio; qui si improbasset, cur ferri passus esset? si probasset, cur se uti populi beneficio prohibuisset?
4 Patientiam proponit suam, cum de exercitibus dimittendis

ultro postulavisset; in quo iacturam dignitatis atque honoris ipse facturus esset. Acerbitatem inimicorum docet, qui, 5
quod ab altero postularent, in se recusarent atque omnia permisceri mallent, quam imperium exercitusque dimittere.
Iniuriam in eripiendis legionibus praedicat, crudelitatem et 6
insolentiam in circumscribendis tribunis plebis; condiciones a se latas, expetita colloquia et denegata commemorat. Pro 7
quibus rebus hortatur ac postulat ut rem publicam suscipiant atque una secum administrent. Sin timore defugiant, illis se oneri non futurum et per se rem publicam administraturum. Legatos ad Pompeium de compositione mitti 8
oportere, neque se reformidare, quod in senatu Pompeius paulo ante dixisset, ad quos legati mitterentur, his auctoritatem attribui timoremque eorum, qui mitterent, significari. Tenuis atque infirmi haec animi videri. Se vero, ut operibus anteire studuerit, sic iustitia et aequitate velle superare.

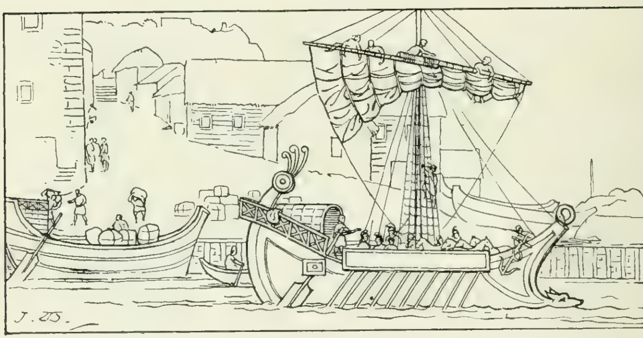
April 1–3. *Further proceedings in the Senate: no envoys can be found to go to Pompey, and no agreement can be arrived at with Caesar. The latter determines to act for himself and starts for Gaul* (April 7).

Probat rem senatus de mittendis legatis; sed qui mit- **33**
terentur non reperiebantur, maximeque timoris causa pro se quisque id munus legationis recusabat. Pompeius enim 2
discedens ab urbe in senatu dixerat eodem se habiturum loco qui Romae remansissent et qui in castris Caesaris fuissent. Sic triduum disputationibus excusationibusque 3
extrahitur. Subicitur etiam L. Metellus, tribunus plebis, ab inimicis Caesaris, qui hanc rem distrahat reliquasque res, quascumque agere instituerit, impediat. Cuius cognito 4
consilio Caesar frustra diebus aliquot consumptis, ne reli-

quum tempus dimittat, infectis iis, quae agere destinaverat, ab urbe proficiscitur atque in ulteriorem Galliam pervenit.

April 19. *Caesar reaches Massilia, which closes its gates against him.*

34 Quo cum venisset, cognoscit missum in Hispaniam a
Pompeio Vibullium Rufum, quem paucis ante diebus
2 Corfini captum ipse dimiserat; profectum item Domitium



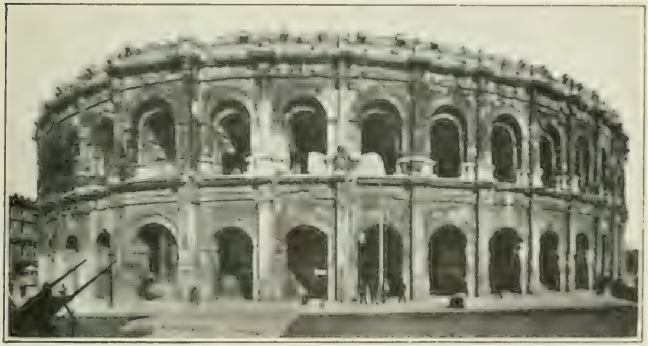
Navis Actvaria. (From the Vatican Vergil and Trajan's Column.)

ad occupandam Massiliam navibus actuariis septem, quas
Igili et in Cosano a privatis coactas servis, libertis, colonis
3 suis compleverat; praemissos etiam legatos Massilienses
domum, nobiles adulescentes, quos ab urbe discedens
Pompeius erat adhortatus, ne nova Caesaris officia veterum
4 suorum beneficiorum in eos memoriam expellerent. Qui-
bus mandatis acceptis Massilienses portas Caesari clauserant;
Albicos, barbaros homines, qui in eorum fide antiquitus
erant montesque supra Massiliam incolebant, ad se voca-

verant; frumentum ex finitimis regionibus atque ex omni- 5
bus castellis in urbem convexerant; armorum officinas in urbe instituerant; muros, portas, classem reficiebant.

April 20. *Caesar confers with the chief magistrates of Massilia: they profess neutrality,*

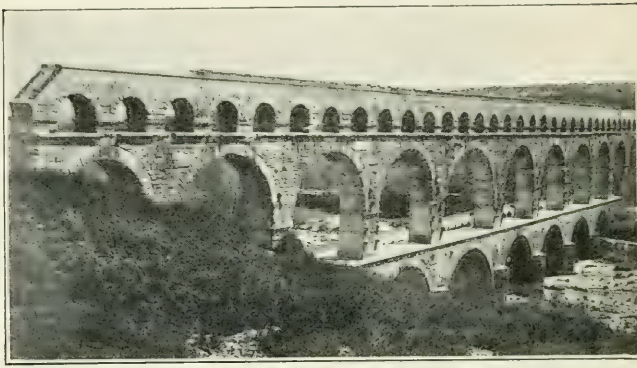
Evocat ad se Caesar Massilia XV primos. Cum his agit, 35
ne initium inferendi belli a Massiliensibus oriatur: debere eos



NÎMES, THE AMPHITHEATRE.

Italiae totius auctoritatem sequi potius quam unius hominis voluntati obtemperare. Reliqua, quae ad eorum sanandas 2
mentes pertinere arbitrabatur, commemorat. Cujus oratio- 3
nem legati domum referunt atque ex auctoritate senatus hoc Caesari renuntiant: intellegere se divisum esse populum Romanum in partes duas. Neque sui iudicii neque suarum esse virium decernere, utra pars iustiorem habeat causam. Principes vero esse earum partium Cn. Pompeium et 4
C. Caesarem, patronos civitatis; quorum alter agros Volcarum Arecomicorum et Helviorum publice iis concesserit.

alter bello victos Sallyas attribuerit vectigaliaque auxerit.
5 Quare paribus eorum beneficiis parem se quoque volun-



PONT DU GARD, NEAR NÎMES.

tatem tribuere debere et neutrum eorum contra alterum iuvare aut urbe aut portibus recipere.

but welcome Domitius, the Pompeian commander, and his squadron and prepare for war. Caesar (April 21) *sends for more troops and orders ships to be built. He leaves C. Trebonius and D. Brutus to carry on the siege and starts for Spain* (June 5).

36 Haec dum inter eos aguntur, Domitius navibus Massiliam pervenit atque ab iis receptus urbi praeficitur: summa ei
2 belli administrandi permittitur. Eius imperio classem quoquo versus dimittunt; onerarias naves, quas ubique possunt, deprendunt atque in portum deducunt, parum clavis aut materia atque armamentis instructis ad reliquas
3 armandas reficiendasque utuntur; frumenti quod inventum est in publicum conferunt; reliquas merces commeatusque
4 ad obsidionem urbis, si accidat, reservant. Quibus iniuriis

permotus Caesar legiones tres Massiliam adducit; turres vineasque ad oppugnationem urbis agere, naves longas Arelate numero XII facere instituit. Quibus effectis armatisque diebus XXX, a quo die materia caesa est, adductisque Massiliam, his D. Brutum praeficit; C. Trebonium legatum ad oppugnationem Massiliae relinquit.



ARLES, LOOKING FROM THE AMPHITHEATRE TOWARDS THE RHONE.

Meanwhile he had sent Fabius to begin the Spanish campaign. Fabius had forced his way over the Pyrenees and was approaching the enemy (May 10–20).

Dum haec parat atque administrat, C. Fabium legatum 37
cum legionibus III, quas Narbone circumque ea loca hiemandi causa disposuerat, in Hispaniam praemittit celeriterque saltus Pyrenaeos occupari iubet, qui eo tempore ab
L. Afranio legato praesidiis tenebantur. Reliquas legiones, 2
quae longius hiemabant, subsequi iubet. Fabius, ut erat 3
imperatum, adhibita celeritate praesidium ex saltu deiecit magnisque itineribus ad exercitum Afrani contendit.



The Pyrenees near the source of the Segre.

The three Pompeian generals in Spain effect a redistribution of forces: Afranius and Petreius concentrate their troops near Ilerda (May 10-20).

38 Adventu L. Vibulli Rufi, quem a Pompeio missum in Hispaniam demonstratum est, Afranius et Petreius et Varro, legati Pompei, quorum unus Hispaniam citeriorem tribus legionibus, alter ulteriorem a saltu Castulonensi ad Anam duabus legionibus, tertius ab Ana Vettonum agrum Lusi-
2 taniamque pari numero legionum obtinebat, officia inter se partiuntur, uti Petreius ex Lusitania per Vettones cum omnibus copiis ad Afranium proficiscatur, Varro cum iis quas habebat legionibus omnem ulteriorem Hispaniam
3 tueatur. His rebus constitutis equites auxiliaque toti Lusitaniae a Petreio, Celtiberiae, Cantabris barbarisque omnibus,
4 qui ad Oceanum pertinent, ab Afranio imperantur. Quibus coactis celeriter Petreius per Vettones ad Afranium pervenit

constituuntque communi consilio bellum ad Ilerdam propter ipsius loci opportunitatem gerere.

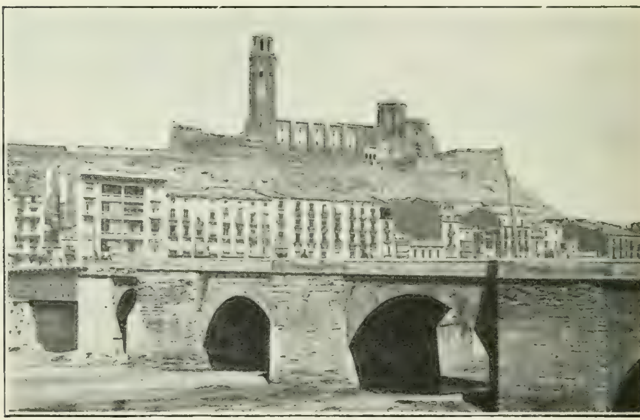
Comparative strength of the rival forces in Spain. How Caesar paid his soldiers.

Erant, ut supra demonstratum est, legiones Afrani III, **39**
Petrei duae, praeterea scutatae citerioris provinciae et caetratae ulterioris Hispaniae cohortes circiter LXXX equitumque utriusque provinciae circiter V milia. Caesar legiones in 2
Hispaniam praemiserat VI, auxilia peditum V milia, equitum III milia, quae omnibus superioribus bellis habuerat, et parem ex Gallia numerum, quam ipse pacaverat, nominatim ex omnibus civitatibus nobilissimo et fortissimo quoque evocato, . . . optimi generis hominum ex Aquitanis montanisque, qui Galliam provinciam attingunt. . . . Audierat Pompeium 3
per Mauretaniam cum legionibus iter in Hispaniam facere confestimque esse venturum. Simul a tribunis militum centurionibusque mutuas pecunias sumpsit; has exercitui distribuit. Quo facto duas res consecutus est, quod pignore 4
animos centurionum devinxit et largitione militum voluntates redemit.

Fabius's camp on the Sicoris N. of Ilerda (May 20–June 23). June 20. *Two of his legions are isolated through the breaking of a bridge, but are ultimately rescued.*

Fabius finitimarum civitatum animos litteris nuntiisque **40**
temptabat. In Sicori flumine pontes effecerat duos distantes inter se milia passuum IIII. His pontibus pabulatum mittebat, quod ea, quae citra flumen fuerant, superioribus diebus consumpserat. Hoc idem fere atque eadem de causa 2
Pompeiani exercitus duces faciebant, crebroque inter se equestribus proeliis contendebant. Huc cum cotidiana 3
consuetudine egressae pabulatoribus praesidio propiore ponte legiones Fabianae duae flumen transissent impedi-

mentaque et omnis equitatus sequeretur, subito vi ventorum et aquae magnitudine pons est interruptus et reliqua multi-
4 tudo equitum interclusa. Quo cognito a Petreio et Afranio ex aggere atque cratibus, quae flumine ferebantur, celeriter suo ponte Afranius, quem oppido castrisque coniunctum habebat, legiones IIII equitatumque omnem traiecit dua-
5 busque Fabianis occurrit legionibus. Cuius adventu nuntiato L. Plancus, qui legionibus praeerat, necessaria re



Bridge across the Segre at Lérida.

coactus locum capit superiorem diversamque aciem in duas
6 partes constituit, ne ab equitatu circumveniri posset. Ita congressus impari numero magnos impetus legionum equi-
7 tatusque sustinet. Commisso ab equitibus proelio signa legionum duarum procul ab utrisque conspiciuntur, quas C. Fabius ulteriore ponte subsidio nostris miserat suspicatus fore id, quod accidit, ut duces adversariorum occasione et beneficio fortunae ad nostros opprimendos uterentur.

Quarum adventu proelium dirimitur ac suas uterque legiones reducit in castra.

June 22. *Caesar's arrival.* June 23. *He moves his troops nearer to the enemy's position S. of Ilerda,*

Eo biduo Caesar cum equitibus DCCCC, quos sibi praesidio 41 reliquerat, in castra pervenit. Pons, qui fuerat tempestate interruptus, paene erat refectus: hunc noctu perfici iussit. Ipse cognita locorum natura ponti castrisque praesidio sex cohortes relinquit atque omnia impedimenta et postero die omnibus copiis triplici instructa acie ad Ilerdam proficiscitur et sub castris Afrani consistit et ibi paulisper sub armis moratus facit aequo loco pugnandi potestatem. Potestate facta Afranius copias educit et in medio colle sub castris constituit. Caesar ubi cognovit per Afranium stare, quo minus proelio dimicaretur, ab infimis radicibus montis intermissis circiter passibus CCCC castra facere constituit et, ne in opere faciundo milites repentino hostium incursu exterrerentur atque opere prohiberentur, vallo muniri vetuit, quod eminere et procul videri necesse erat, sed a fronte contra hostem pedum XV fossam fieri iussit. Prima et secunda acies in armis, ut ab initio constituta erat, permanebat; post has opus in occulto a III. acie fiebat. Sic omne prius est perfectum, quam intellegeretur ab Afranio castra muniri. Sub vesperum Caesar intra hanc fossam legiones reducit atque ibi sub armis proxima nocte conquiescit.

where he fortifies a new camp (June 24–25).

Postero die omnem exercitum intra fossam continet et, 42 quod longius erat agger petendus, in praesentia similem rationem operis instituit singulaque latera castrorum singulis attribuit legionibus munienda fossasque ad eandem magnitudinem perfici iubet: reliquas legiones in armis expeditas

2 contra hostem constituit. Afranius Petreiusque terrendi causa atque operis impediendi copias suas ad infimas montis 3 radices producunt et proelio lacessunt; neque idcirco Caesar opus intermittit confisus praesidio legionum trium 4 et munitione fossae. Illi non diu commorati nec longius 5 ab infimo colle progressi copias in castra reducunt. Tertio die Caesar vallo castra communit; reliquas cohortes, quas in superioribus castris reliquerat, impedimentaque ad se traduci iubet.

June 26. *Caesar tries to seize a hill between Ilerda and the enemy's camp; the movement is anticipated by the enemy and his men are forced to retire.*

43 Erat inter oppidum Ilerdam et proximum collem, ubi



LÉRIDA, FROM THE SLOPES OF GARDENY (showing the *tumulus*, chap. xliii).

castra Petreius atque Afranius habebant, planities circiter passuum CCC atque in hoc fere medio spatio tumulus erat 2 paulo editior; quem si occupavisset Caesar et communi-

visset, ab oppido et ponte et commeatu omni, quem in oppidum contulerant, se interclusurum adversarios confidebat. Hoc sperans legiones III ex castris educit acieque in 3 locis idoneis instructa unius legionis antesignanos procurrere atque eum tumulum occupare iubet. Qua re cognita 4 celeriter quae in statione pro castris erant Afrani cohortes breviore itinere ad eundem occupandum locum mittuntur. Contenditur proelio et, quod prius in tumulum Afraniani 5 venerant, nostri repelluntur atque aliis summissis subsidiis terga vertere seque ad signa legionum recipere coguntur.

Caesar's troops are confused by the enemy's undisciplined method of fighting.

Genus erat pugnae militum illorum, ut magno impetu **44** primo procurrerent, audacter locum caperent, ordines suos non magnopere servarent, rari dispersique pugnarent, si 2 premerentur, pedem referre et loco excedere non turpe existimarent, cum Lusitanis reliquisque barbaris continenter bellum gerentes barbaro genere quodam pugnae assuefacti; quod fere fit, quibus quisque in locis miles inveteraverit, 3 ut multum earum regionum consuetudine moveatur. Haec 4 tum ratio nostros perturbavit insuetos huius generis pugnae: circumiri enim sese ab aperto latere procurrentibus singulis arbitrabantur: ipsi autem suos ordines servare neque ab signis discedere neque sine gravi causa eum locum, quem ceperant, dimitti censuerant oportere. Itaque perturbatis 5 antesignanis legio, quae in eo cornu constiterat, locum non tenuit atque in proximum collem sese recepit.

They are reinforced and drive the enemy back, but pursue them too close to the walls of Ilerda.

Caesar paene omni acie perterrita, quod id praeter **45** opinionem consuetudinemque acciderat, cohortatus suos legionem nonam subsidio ducit: hostem insolenter atque

acriter nostros insequentem supprimit rursusque terga vertere seque ad oppidum Ilerdam recipere et sub muro
2 consistere cogit. Sed nonae legionis milites elati studio, dum sarcire acceptum detrimentum volunt, temere insecuti longius fugientes in locum iniquum progrediuntur et sub montem, in quo erat oppidum positum Ilerda, succedunt.
3 Hinc se recipere cum vellent, rursus illi ex loco superiore
4 nostros premebant. Praeruptus locus erat, utraque ex



ARCH OF ANCIENT ROMAN GATEWAY OPPOSITE THE BRIDGE-HEAD AT LÉRIDA.

parte derectus ac tantum in latitudinem patebat, ut tres instructae cohortes eum locum explerent, ut neque subsidia ab lateribus summitti neque equites laborantibus usui esse
5 possent. Ab oppido autem declivis locus leni fastigio
6 vergebat in longitudinem passus circiter CCCC. Hac nostris erat receptus, quod eo incitati studio inconsultius processerant; hoc pugnabatur loco et propter angustias iniquo et quod sub ipsis radicibus montis constiterant, ut nullum frustra telum in eos mitteretur. Tamen virtute et patientia

nitebantur atque omnia vulnera sustinebant. Augebantur 7
illis copiae, atque ex castris cohortes per oppidum crebro summittebantur, ut integri defessis succederent. Hoc idem Caesar facere cogebatur, ut summissis in eundem locum cohortibus defessos reciperet.

They succeed in withdrawing, covered by their cavalry. The losses on either side.

Hoc cum esset modo pugnatum continenter horis quinque 46
nostrique gravius a multitudine premerentur, consumptis omnibus telis gladiis destrictis impetum adversus montem in cohortes faciunt paucisque deiectis reliquos sese convertere cogunt. Summotis sub murum cohortibus ac non 2
nullam partem propter terrorem in oppidum compulsis facilis est nostris receptus datus. Equitatus autem noster 3
ab utroque latere, etsi deiectis atque inferioribus locis constiterat, tamen summa in iugum virtute conititur atque inter duas acies perequitans commodiorem ac tutiorem nostris receptum dat. Ita vario certamine pugnatum est. Nostri 4
in primo congressu circiter LXX ceciderunt, in his Q. Fulginius ex primo hastato legionis XIIII., qui propter eximiam virtutem ex inferioribus ordinibus in eum locum pervenerat; vulnerantur amplius DC. Ex Afranianis interficiuntur 5
T. Caecilius, primi pili centurio, et praeter eum centuriones IIII, milites amplius CC.

Both parties claim the advantage.

Sed haec eius diei praeferebatur opinio, ut se utrique 47
superiores discessisse existimarent: Afraniani, quod, cum 2
esse omnium iudicio inferiores viderentur, comminus tam diu stetissent et nostrorum impetum sustinuissent et ab initio locum tumulumque tenuissent, quae causa pugnandi fuerat, et nostros primo congressu terga vertere coegissent;

3 nostri autem, quod iniquo loco atque impari congressi
numero quinque horis proelium sustinuissent, quod montem
gladiis destrictis ascendissent, quod ex loco superiore terga
vertere adversarios coegissent atque in oppidum compu-
4 lissent. Illi eum tumulum, pro quo pugnatum est, magnis
operibus muniverunt et praesidium ibi posuerunt.

June 28 and following days. *Caesar's two bridges across the Sicoris are carried away by floods and he is cut off from supplies.*

48 Accidit etiam repentinum incommodum biduo, quo haec
gesta sunt. Tanta enim tempestas cooritur, ut numquam
2 illis locis maiores aquas fuisse constaret. Tum autem ex
omnibus montibus nives proluit ac summas ripas fluminis
superavit pontesque ambos, quos C. Fabius fecerat, uno die
3 interrupit. Quae res magnas difficultates exercitui Caesaris
attulit. Castra enim, ut supra demonstratum est, cum
essent inter flumina duo, Sicorim et Cingam, spatio milium
XXX, neutrum horum transiri poterat, necessarioque omnes his
4 angustiis continebantur. Neque civitates, quae ad Caesaris
amicitiam accesserant, frumentum supportare, neque ii, qui
pabulatum longius progressi erant, interclusi fluminibus
reverti, neque maximi commeatus, qui ex Italia Galliaque
5 veniebant, in castra pervenire poterant. Tempus autem
erat difficillimum, quo neque frumenta in acervis erant neque
multum a maturitate aberant; ac civitates exinanitae, quod
Afranius paene omne frumentum ante Caesaris adventum
Ilerdam convexerat, reliqui si quid fuerat, Caesar superiori-
6 bus diebus consumpserat; pecora, quod secundum poterat
esse inopiae subsidium, propter bellum finitimae civitates
7 longius removerant. Qui erant pabulandi aut frumentandi
causa progressi, hos levis armaturae Lusitani peritique earum
regionum caetrati citerioris Hispaniae consectabantur;

quibus erat proclive tranare flumen, quod consuetudo eorum omnium est, ut sine utribus ad exercitum non eant.

But the Pompeians have provisions in plenty and can still use their bridge at Ilerda.

At exercitus Afrani omnium rerum abundabat copia. 49
Multum erat frumentum provisum et convectum superioribus temporibus, multum ex omni provincia comportabatur; magna copia pabuli suppetebat. Harum omnium rerum 2
facultates sine ullo periculo pons Ilerdae praebebat et loca trans flumen integra, quo omnino Caesar adire non poterat.

The bad weather continues and the bridges cannot be rebuilt.

Hae permanserunt aquae dies complures. Conatus est 50
Caesar reficere pontes; sed nec magnitudo fluminis permittebat neque ad ripam dispositae cohortes adversariorum perfici patiebantur: quod illis prohibere erat facile cum 2
ipsius fluminis natura atque aquae magnitudine, tum quod ex totis ripis in unum atque angustum locum tela iaciebantur; atque erat difficile eodem tempore rapidissimo 3
flumine opera perficere et tela vitare.

A convoy for Caesar from Gaul cannot cross the Sicoris and is attacked by the enemy. The escort saves it, but suffers considerable loss.

Nuntiatur Afranio magnos commeatus, qui iter habebant 51
ad Caesarem, ad flumen constitisse. Venerant eo sagittarii ex Rutenis, equites ex Gallia cum multis carris magnisque impedimentis, ut fert Gallica consuetudo. Erant praeterea 2
cuiusque generis hominum milia circiter vi cum servis liberisque: sed nullus ordo, nullum imperium certum, nisi

suo quisque consilio uteretur atque omnes sine timore iter facerent usi superiorum temporum atque itinerum licentia.
3 Erant complures honesti adulescentes, senatorum filii et ordinis equestris ; erant legationes civitatum ; erant legati
4 Caesaris. Hos omnes flumina continebant. Ad hos opprimendos cum omni equitatu tribusque legionibus Afranius de nocte proficiscitur imprudentesque ante missis equitibus aggreditur. Celeriter sese tamen Galli equites expediunt
5 proeliumque committunt. Ii, dum pari certamine res geri



CONVOYING BAGGAGE. (From a bas-relief on the column of Marcus Aurelius.)

potuit, magnum hostium numerum pauci sustinuere ; sed, ubi signa legionum appropinquare coeperunt, paucis amissis
6 sese in proximos montes conferunt. Hoc pugnae tempus magnum attulit nostris ad salutem momentum ; nacti enim spatium se in loca superiora receperunt. Desiderati sunt eo die sagittarii circiter CC, equites pauci, calonum atque impedimentorum non magnus numerus.

Famine in Caesar's camp. His efforts to relieve the desperate situation.

His tamen omnibus annona crevit: quae fere res non solum inopia praesenti, sed etiam futuri temporis timore ingravescere consuevit. **52** Iamque ad denarios L in singulos modios annona pervenerat, et militum vires inopia frumenti deminuerat, atque incommoda in dies augebantur: ita paucis diebus magna erat rerum facta commutatio ac se fortuna inclinaverat, ut nostri magna inopia necessariarum rerum conflictarentur, illi omnibus abundarent rebus superioresque haberentur. 2 3 Caesar iis civitatibus, quae ad eius amicitiam accesserant, quod minor erat frumenti copia, pecus imperabat; calones ad longinquiores civitates dimittebat; ipse praesentem inopiam quibus poterat subsidiis tutabatur. 4

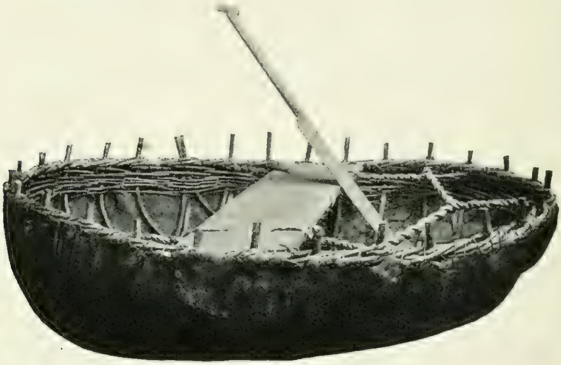
July 14–17. *Exaggerated accounts of Caesar's plight reach Rome and cause many waverers to join Pompey.*

Haec Afranius Petreiusque et eorum amici pleniora etiam atque uberiora Romam ad suos perscribebant. **53** Multa rumor adfingebat, ut paene bellum confectum videretur. 2 Quibus litteris nuntiisque Romam perlatis magni concursus ad Afrani domum magnaeque gratulationes fiebant: multi ex Italia ad Cn. Pompeium proficiscebantur, alii, ut principes talem nuntium attulisse, alii, ne eventum belli exspectasse aut ex omnibus novissimi venisse viderentur. 3

July 3–12. ***Caesar builds boats, conveys them some miles up stream, crosses the river, builds a bridge and brings his convoy across.***

Cum in his angustiis res esset atque omnes viae ab Afranianis militibus equitibusque obsiderentur nec pontes perfici possent, imperat militibus Caesar, ut naves faciant, cuius generis eum superioribus annis usus Britanniae do- **54**

2 cuerat. Carinae ac prima statumina ex levi materia fiebant; reliquum corpus navium viminibus contextum coriis
3 integebatur. Has perfectas carris iunctis devehit noctu milia passuum a castris XXII militesque his navibus flumen transportat continentemque ripae collem improviso occupat.
4 Hunc celeriter prius quam ab adversariis sentiatur com-



Irish Coracle (made of horse-skin stretched over wicker-work—recently in use on the River Boyne: see note).
Copyright, H. Balfour.]

munit. Huc legionem postea traiecit atque ex utraque
5 parte pontem institutum biduo perfecit. Ita commeatus et qui frumenti causa processerant tuto ad se recipit et rem frumentariam expedire incipit.

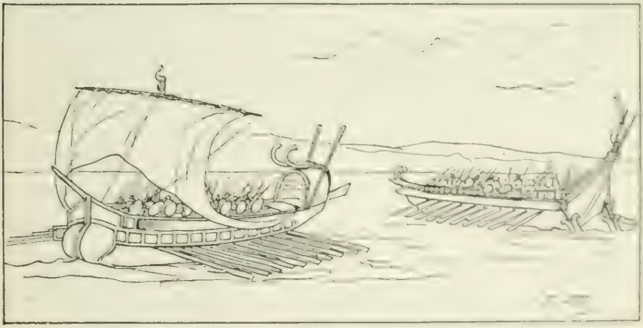
July 12. *Caesar's cavalry cut to pieces a foraging party of the enemy.*

55 Eodem die equitum magnam partem flumen traiecit. Qui inopinantes pabulatores et sine ullo dissipatos timore aggressi magnum numerum iumentorum atque hominum
2 intercipiunt, cohortibusque caetratis subsidio missis scienter in duas partes sese distribuunt, alii ut praedae praesidio

sint, alii ut venientibus resistant atque eos propellunt, unamque cohortem, quae temere ante ceteras extra aciem procurrerat, seclusam ab reliquis circumveniunt atque interficiunt incolumesque cum magna praeda eodem ponte in castra revertuntur.

July 1. *Domitius equips his fleet at Massilia and sails out to meet the Caesarians.*

Dum haec ad Ilerdam geruntur, Massilienses usi L. Domiti consilio naves longas expediunt numero XVII, quarum 56



Roman Warships. (From a Pompeian wall-painting.)

erant XI tectae. Multa huc minora navigia addunt, ut ipsa multitudine nostra classis terreatur. Magnum numerum sagittariorum, magnum Albicorum, de quibus supra demonstratum est, imponunt atque hos praemiis pollicitationibusque incitant. Certas sibi deposcit naves Domitius atque has colonis pastoribusque, quos secum adduxerat, complet. Sic omnibus rebus instructa classe magna fiducia ad nostras naves procedunt, quibus praeerat D. Brutus. Hae ad insulam, quae est contra Massiliam, stationes obtinebant.



A Sea-fight.

Brutus joins battle with Domitius.

57 Erat multo inferior numero navium Brutus ; sed electos ex omnibus legionibus fortissimos viros, antesignanos, centuriones, Caesar ei classi attribuerat, qui sibi id muneris
2 depoposcerant. Hi manus ferreas atque harpagones paraverant magnoque numero pilorum, tragularum reliquorumque telorum se instruxerant. Ita cognito hostium adventu suas naves ex portu educunt, cum Massiliensibus
3 confligunt. Pugnatum est utrimque fortissime atque acerrime ; neque multum Albici nostris virtute cedebant, homines
4 asperi et montani et exercitati in armis ; atque hi modo digressi a Massiliensibus recentem eorum pollicitationem animis continebant, pastoresque illi Domiti spe libertatis excitati sub oculis domini suam probare operam studebant.



MARSEILLES—ENTRANCE TO THE PORT.

Complete victory of the Caesarians.

Ipsi Massilienses et celeritate navium et scientia guberna- 58
torum confisi nostros eludebant impetusque eorum non
excipiebant et, quoad licebat latiore uti spatio, producta
longius acie circumvenire nostros aut pluribus navibus
adoriri singulas aut remos transcurrentes detergere, si
possent, contendebant; cum propius erat necessario 2
ventum, ab scientia gubernatorum atque artificiis ad virtu-
tem montanorum confugiebant. Nostri cum minus exer- 3
citatis remigibus minusque peritis gubernatoribus utebantur,
qui repente ex onerariis navibus erant producti neque dum
etiam vocabulis armamentorum cogniti, tum etiam tardi-
tate et gravitate navium impediebantur; factae enim subito
ex umida materia non eundem usum celeritatis habebant.
Itaque, dum locus comminus pugnandi daretur, aequo 4
animo singulas binis navibus obiciebant atque iniecta manu
ferrea et retenta utraque nave diversi pugnabant atque in
hostium naves transcendebant. Et magno numero Albi-
corum et pastorum interfecto partem navium deprimunt,

non nullas cum hominibus capiunt, reliquas in portum compellunt. Eo die naves Massiliensium Domitique sunt captae VI, interierunt VIIII.

News of this victory reaches Caesar (between July 7 and 12). *His cavalry worry the enemy's foragers.*

59 Hoc proelium Caesari ad Ilerdam nuntiatur; simul per-
2 fecto ponte celeriter fortuna mutatur. Illi perterriti virtute equitum minus libere, minus audacter vagabantur: alias non longe a castris progressi spatio, ut celerem receptum habe-
3 rent, angustiore pabulabantur, alias longiore circuitu custodias stationesque equitum vitabant aut aliquo accepto detrimento aut procul equitatu viso ex medio itinere proiectis sarcinis fugiebant. Postremo et plures intermittere dies et praeter consuetudinem omnium noctu instituerant pabulari.

Caesar's prospects improve: many Spanish tribes join him.

60 Interim Oscenses et Calagurritani, qui erant Oscensibus contributi, mittunt ad eum legatos seseque imperata facturos
2 pollicentur. Hos Tarraconenses et Iacetani et Ausetani et paucis post diebus Illurgavonenses, qui flumen Hiberum
3 attingunt, insequuntur. Petit ab his omnibus ut se frumento iuvent. Pollicentur atque omnibus undique con-
4 quisitis iumentis in castra deportant. Transit etiam cohors Illurgavonensis ad eum cognito civitatis consilio et signa ex statione transfert. Magna celeriter commutatio rerum.
5 Perfecto ponte, magnis quinque civitatibus ad amicitiam adiunctis, expedita re frumentaria, exstinctis rumoribus de auxiliis legionum, quae cum Pompeio per Mauretaniam venire dicebantur, multae longinquiores civitates ab Afranio desciscunt et Caesaris amicitiam sequuntur.

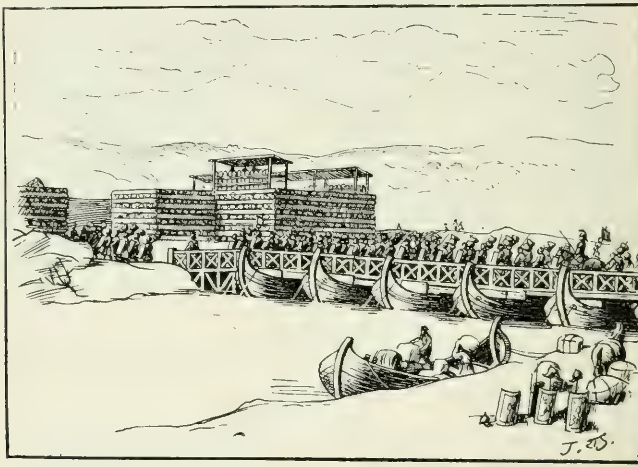


BRIDGE ACROSS THE RIBARGOZANA. (See note on chap. liv.)

July 18. *Caesar begins constructing a ford over the Sicoris near Ilerda. The Pompeians resolve to retreat south of the Hiberus.* July 21. *Some of their troops cross the Sicoris.*

Quibus rebus perterritis animis adversariorum Caesar, 61
ne semper magno circuitu per pontem equitatus esset
mittendus, nactus idoneum locum fossas pedum XXX in
latitudinem complures facere instituit, quibus partem aliquam
Sicoris averteret vadumque in eo flumine efficeret. His 2
paene effectis magnum in timorem Afranius Petreiusque
perveniunt, ne omnino frumento pabuloque intercluderentur,
quod multum Caesar equitatu valebat. Itaque constituunt
illis locis excedere et in Celtiberiam bellum transferre.
Huic consilio suffragabatur etiam illa res, quod ex duobus 3
contrariis generibus, quae superiore bello cum Sertorio
steterant civitates, victae nomen atque imperium absentis
Pompei timebant, quae in amicitia manserant, magnis
adfectae beneficiis eum diligebant; Caesaris autem erat in

barbaris nomen obscurius. Hic magnos equitatus magnaque auxilia exspectabant et suis locis bellum in hiemem
4 ducere cogitabant. Hoc inito consilio toto flumine Hibero naves conquiri et Octogesam adduci iubent. Id erat oppidum positum ad Hiberum miliaque passuum a castris



A Bridge of Boats with a Fort. (From Trajan's Column.)

aberat xxx. Ad eum locum fluminis navibus iunctis pontem imperant fieri legionesque duas flumen Sicorim traducunt castraque muniunt vallo pedum xii.

Work at the ford is hurried on by Caesar: cavalry can now cross (July 24).

62 Qua re per exploratores cognita summo labore militum Caesar continuato diem noctemque opere in flumine avertendo huc iam deduxerat rem, ut equites, etsi difficulter
2 atque aegre fiebat, possent tamen atque auderent flumen

transire, pedites vero tantummodo umeris ac summo
pectore exstarent et cum altitudine aquae tum etiam rapi-
ditate fluminis ad transeundum impedirentur. Sed tamen 3
eodem fere tempore pons in Hibero prope effectus nuntia-
batur et in Sicori vadum reperiebatur.

The main body of the enemy cross the Sicoris (July 24), *and start for the Hiberus* (July 25 early morning). *Caesar's cavalry envelop their rear.*

Iam vero eo magis illi maturandum iter existimabant. 63
Itaque duabus auxiliaribus cohortibus Ilerdae praesidio
relictis omnibus copiis Sicorim transeunt et cum duabus
legionibus, quas superioribus diebus traduxerant, castra
coniungunt. Relinquebatur Caesari nihil, nisi uti equitatu 2
agmen adversariorum male haberet et carperet. Pons enim
ipsius magnum circuitum habebat, ut multo breviore itinere
illi ad Hiberum pervenire possent. Equites ab eo missi 3
flumen transeunt et, cum de tertia vigilia Petreius atque
Afranius castra movissent, repente sese ad novissimum
agmen ostendunt et magna multitudine circumfusa morari
atque impedire iter incipiunt.

July 25. *Caesar's legions succeed in crossing by the ford, and overtake his cavalry.*

Prima luce ex superioribus locis, quae Caesaris castris 64
erant coniuncta, cernebatur equitatus nostri proelio novis-
simos illorum premi vehementer, ac non numquam susti-
nere extremum agmen atque iter interrumpi, alias inferri 2
signa et universarum cohortium impetu nostros propelli,
dein rursus conversos insequi. Totis vero castris milites 3
circulari et dolere hostem ex manibus dimitti, bellum neces-
sario longius duci: centurionesque tribunosque militum
adire atque obsecrare, ut per eos Caesar certior fieret, ne

labori suo neu periculo parceret: paratos esse sese, posse
et audere ea transire flumen, qua traductus esset equitatus.
4 Quorum studio et vocibus excitatus Caesar, etsi timebat
tantae magnitudini fluminis exercitum obicere, conandum
5 tamen atque experiendum iudicat. Itaque infirmiores
milites ex omnibus centuriis deligi iubet, quorum aut
6 animus aut vires videbantur sustinere non posse. Hos cum
legione una praesidio castris relinquit; reliquas legiones
expeditas educit magnoque numero iumentorum in flumine
7 supra atque infra constituto traducit exercitum. Pauci ex
his militibus ablati flumine ab equitatu excipiuntur ac sub-
levantur; interit tamen nemo. Traducto incolumi exercitu
8 copias instruit triplicemque aciem ducere incipit. Ac
tantum fuit in militibus studi, ut milium sex ad iter addito
circuitu magnaque ad vadum fluminis mora interposita eos,
qui de tertia vigilia exissent, ante horam diei VIIII. conse-
querentur.

The Pompeians halt and encamp: Caesar follows suit.

65 Quos ubi Afranius procul visos cum Petreio conspexit,
nova re perterritus locis superioribus consistit aciemque
2 instruit. Caesar in campis exercitum reficit, ne defessum
proelio obiciat; rursus conantes progredi insequitur et
3 moratur. Illi necessario maturius quam constituerant
castra ponunt. Suberant enim montes atque a milibus
passuum V itinera difficilia atque angusta excipiebant: hos
4 montes intrare cupiebant, ut equitatum effugerent Caesaris
praesidiisque in angustiis collocatis exercitum itinere pro-
hiberent, ipsi sine periculo ac timore Hiberum copias
5 traducerent. Quod fuit illis conandum atque omni ratione
efficiendum; sed totius diei pugna atque itineris labore
defessi rem in posterum diem distulerunt. Caesar quoque
in proximo colle castra ponit.

Caesar prevents the enemy from continuing their retreat by night. The next day (July 26) *is spent in reconnaissances.*

Media circiter nocte iis, qui aquandi causa longius a 66
castris processerant, ab equitibus correptis fit ab his certior
Caesar duces adversariorum silentio copias castris educere.
Quo cognito signum dari iubet et vasa militari more con- 2
clamari. Illi exaudito clamore veriti, ne noctu impediti
sub onere confligere cogerentur aut ne ab equitatu Caesaris
in angustiis tenerentur, iter supprimunt copiasque in castris
continent. Postero die Petreius cum paucis equitibus 3
occulte ad exploranda loca proficiscitur. Hoc idem fit ex
castris Caesaris: mittitur L. Decidius Saxa cum paucis qui
loci naturam perspiciat. Uterque idem suis renuntiat: v 4
milia passuum proxima intercedere itineris campestris,
inde excipere loca aspera et montuosa; qui prior has
angustias occupaverit, ab hoc hostem prohiberi nihil esse
negoti.

The Pompeians decide to continue their retreat by day.

Disputatur in consilio a Petreio atque Afranio et tempus 67
profectionis quaeritur. Plerique censebant, ut noctu iter
facerent: posse prius ad angustias veniri quam sentiretur. 2
Alii, quod pridie noctu conclamatum esset in Caesaris
castris, argumenti sumebant loco non posse clam exiri.
Circumfundi noctu equitatum Caesaris atque omnia loca 3
atque itinera obsidere: nocturnaque proelia esse vitanda,
quod perterritus miles in civili dissensione timori magis
quam religioni consulere consuerit. At lucem multum per 4
se pudorem omnium oculis, multum etiam tribunorum
militum et centurionum praesentiam adferre: quibus rebus
coerceri milites et in officio contineri soleant. Qua re 5
omni ratione esse interdiu perrumpendum: etsi aliquo
accepto detrimento tamen summa exercitus salva locum,

6 quem petant, capi posse. Haec vincit in consilio sententia, et prima luce postridie constituunt proficisci.

July 27. *Caesar makes a deceptive detour with the object of blocking the road to the Hiberus.*

68 Caesar exploratis regionibus albente caelo omnes copias castris educit magnoque circuitu nullo certo itinere exercitum ducit. Nam quae itinera ad Hiberum atque ad Octogesam pertinebant, castris hostium oppositis tenebantur.
2 Ipsi erant transcendendae valles maximae ac difficillimae, saxa multis locis praerupta iter impediebant, ut arma per manus necessario traderentur militesque inermes sublevatique alii ab aliis magnam partem itineris conficerent.
3 Sed hunc laborem recusabat nemo, quod eum omnium laborum finem fore existimabant, si hostem Hibero intercludere et frumento prohibere potuissent.

The Pompeians soon understand his object and hurry forward.

69 Ac primo Afraniani milites visendi causa laeti ex castris procurrebant contumeliosisque vocibus prosequebantur nostros: necessarii victus inopia coactos fugere atque ad Ilerdam reverti. Erat enim iter a proposito diversum, con-
2 trariamque in partem iri videbatur. Duces vero eorum consilium suum laudibus efferebant, quod se castris tenuissent; multumque eorum opinionem adiuvabat, quod sine iumentis impedimentisque ad iter profectos videbant, ut
3 non posse inopiam diutius sustinere confiderent. Sed, ubi paulatim retorqueri agmen ad dexteram conspexerunt iamque primos superare regionem castrorum animum adverterunt, nemo erat adeo tardus aut fugiens laboris quin
4 statim castris exeundum atque occurrendum putaret. Conclamatur ad arma, atque omnes copiae paucis praesidio relictis cohortibus exeunt rectoque ad Hiberum itinere contendunt.

Caesar succeeds in heading the enemy off. Afranius halts and sends forward a small force to seize a position commanding a fresh route: this force is cut to pieces.

Erat in celeritate omne positum certamen, utri prius 70
angustias montesque occuparent: sed exercitum Caesaris viarum difficultates tardabant, Afrani copias equitatus
Caesaris insequens morabatur. Res tamen ab Afranianis 2



Roman Legionaries.

huc erat necessario deducta, ut, si priores montes, quos petebant, attigissent, ipsi periculum vitarent, impedimenta totius exercitus cohortesque in castris relictas servare non possent; quibus interclusis exercitu Caesaris auxilium ferri
nulla ratione poterat. Confecit prior iter Caesar atque ex 3
magnis rupibus nactus planitiem in hac contra hostem aciem

instruit. Afranius, cum ab equitatu novissimum agmen
premeretur, ante se hostem videret, collem quendam nactus
4 ibi constitit. Ex eo loco IIII caetratorum cohortes in
montem, qui erat in conspectu omnium excelsissimus, mittit.
Hunc magno cursu concitatos iubet occupare, eo consilio,
uti ipse eodem omnibus copiis contenderet et mutato
5 itinere iugis Octogesam perveniret. Hunc cum obliquo
itinere caetrati peterent, conspicatus equitatus Caesaris in
cohortes impetum facit; nec minimam partem temporis
equitum vim caetrati sustinere potuerunt omnesque ab iis
circumventi in conspectu utriusque exercitus interficiuntur.

Caesar is urged to force a battle and crush the enemy.

71 Erat occasio bene gerendae rei. Neque vero id Cae-
sarem fugiebat, tanto sub oculis accepto detrimento perterri-
tum exercitum sustinere non posse, praesertim circumdatum
undique equitatu, cum in loco aequo atque aperto confli-
geretur: idque ex omnibus partibus ab eo flagitabatur.
2 Concurrebant legati, centuriones tribunique militum: ne
dubitaret proelium committere; omnium esse militum
3 paratissimos animos. Afranianos contra multis rebus sui
timoris signa misisse: quod suis non subvenissent, quod
de colle non decederent, quod vix equitum incursus susti-
nerent collatisque in unum locum signis conferti neque
4 ordines neque signa servarent. Quod si iniquitatem loci
timeret, datum iri tamen aliquo loco pugnandi facultatem,
quod certe inde decedendum esset Afranio nec sine aqua
permanere posset.

He refuses to do this, allows the enemy to return to their camp, and himself encamps close to them.

72 Caesar in eam spem venerat, se sine pugna et sine vulnere
suorum rem conficere posse, quod re frumentaria adver-
2 sarios interclusisset. Cur etiam secundo proelio aliquos

ex suis amitteret? cur vulnerari pateretur optime meritos
de se milites? cur denique fortunam periclitaretur? prae-
sertim cum non minus esset imperatoris consilio superare
quam gladio. Movebatur etiam misericordia civium, quos 2
interficiendos videbat: quibus salvis atque incolumibus rem
obtinere malebat. Hoc consilium Caesaris plerisque non 3
probabatur; milites vero palam inter se loquebantur, quo-
niam talis occasio victoriae dimitteretur, etiam cum vellet
Caesar, sese non esse pugnaturos. Ille in sua sententia
perseverat et paulum ex eo loco digreditur, ut timorem
adversariis minuat. Petreius atque Afranius oblata facul- 5
tate in castra sese referunt. Caesar praesidiis in montibus
dispositis omni ad Hiberum intercluso itinere quam proxime
potest hostium castris castra communit.

July 28. *The Pompeian generals leave the camp in order to superintend some entrenching work.*



Roman Aqueduct near Tarragona.

Postero die duces adversariorum perturbati, quod omnem **73**

rei frumentariae fluminisque Hiberi spem dimiserant, de
2 reliquis rebus consultabant. Erat unum iter, Ilerdam si
reverti vellent, alterum, si Tarraconem peterent. Haec
consiliantibus iis nuntiantur aquatores ab equitatu premi
3 nostro. Qua re cognita crebras stationes disponunt equi-
tum et cohortium alariarum legionariasque intericiunt co-
hortes vallumque ex castris ad aquam ducere incipiunt, ut
intra munitionem sine timore et sine stationibus aquari
possent. Id opus inter se Petreius atque Afranius partiun-
tur ipsique perficiendi operis causa longius progrediuntur.

During their absence men from either army take the opportunity of visiting their friends in the enemy's camp. The Pompeian soldiers appeal to Caesar's clemency.

74 Quorum discessu liberam nacti milites colloquiorum
facultatem vulgo procedunt, et quem quisque in castris
Caesaris notum aut municipem habebat conquirit atque
2 evocat. Primum agunt gratias omnes omnibus, quod sibi
perterritis pridie pepercissent: eorum se beneficio vivere.
Dein de imperatoris fide quaerunt, rectene se illi sint com-
missuri, et quod id non ab initio fecerint armaque quod
cum hominibus necessariis et consanguineis contulerint que-
3 runtur. His provocati sermonibus fidem ab imperatore de
Petrei atque Afrani vita petunt, ne quod in se scelus con-
cepisse neu suos prodidisse videantur. Quibus confirmatis
rebus se statim signa translaturos confirmant, legatosque
de pace primorum ordinum centuriones ad Caesarem mit-
4 tunt. Interim alii suos in castra invitandi causa adducunt,
alii ab suis abducuntur, adeo ut una castra iam facta ex
binis viderentur; compluresque tribuni militum et centu-
5 riones ad Caesarem veniunt seque ei commendant. Idem
hoc fit a principibus Hispaniae, quos illi evocaverant et
secum in castris habebant obsidum loco. Hi suos notos

hospitesque quaerebant, per quem quisque eorum aliquem commendationis haberet ad Caesarem. Afrani etiam filius 6
adulescens de sua ac parentis sui salute cum Caesare per Sulpicium legatum agebat. Erant plena laetitia et gratula- 7
tione omnia et eorum, qui tanta pericula vitasse, et eorum, qui sine vulnere tantas res confecisse videbantur, magnumque fructum suae pristinae lenitatis omnium iudicio Caesar ferebat, consiliumque eius a cunctis probabatur.

The Pompeian generals learn what is happening. Petreius returns and forcibly breaks off this unauthorized armistice.

Quibus rebus nuntiatis Afranius ab instituto opere di- 75
scedit seque in castra recipit, sic paratus, ut videbatur, ut, quicumque accidisset casus, hunc quieto et aequo animo ferret; Petreius vero non deserit sese: armat familiam; 2
cum hac et praetoria cohorte caetratorum barbarisque equitibus paucis, beneficiariis suis, quos suae custodiae causa habere consuerat, improviso ad vallum advolat, colloquia militum interrumpit, nostros repellit a castris, quos deprendit, interficit. Reliqui coeunt inter se et repentino 3
periculo exterriti sinistras sagis involvunt gladiosque destringunt atque ita se a caetratis equitibusque defendunt castrorum propinquitate confisi seque in castra recipiunt et ab iis cohortibus, quae erant in statione ad portas, defenduntur.

Petreius compels his troops to take a public oath of allegiance and the state of war is resumed.

Quibus rebus confectis flens Petreius manipulos circumit 76
militesque appellat, neu se neu Pompeium absentem imperatorem suum adversariis ad supplicium tradant obsecrat. Fit celeriter concursus in praetorium. Postulat ut iurent 2
omnes se exercitum ducesque non deserturos neque prodituros neque sibi separatim a reliquis consilium capturos.

3 Princeps in haec verba iurat ipse; idem ius iurandum adigit Afranium; subsequuntur tribuni militum centurionesque;
4 centuriatim producti milites idem iurant. Edicunt, penes quem quisque sit Caesaris miles, ut producat: productos palam in praetorio interficiunt. Sed plerosque ii, qui
5 receperant, celant noctuque per vallum emittunt. Sic terror oblatus a ducibus, crudelitas in supplicio, nova religio iuris iurandi spem praesentis deditionis sustulit mentesque militum convertit et rem ad pristinam belli rationem redegit.

Caesar sends back the Pompeians who are in his camp. Some prefer to remain with him.

77 Caesar qui milites adversariorum in castra per tempus colloqui venerant, summa diligentia conquiri et remitti
2 iubet. Sed ex numero tribunorum militum centurionumque non nulli sua voluntate apud eum remanserunt. Quos ille postea magno in honore habuit; centuriones in priores ordines, equites Romanos in tribunicium restituit honorem.

July 29. *The difficult position of the Pompeians. Having resolved to return to Ilerda they start in that direction. Caesar follows and harasses their rear-guard.*

78 Prohibebantur Afraniani pabulatione, aquabantur aegre. Frumenti copiam legionarii non nullam habebant, quod
2 dierum XII ab Ilerda frumentum iussi erant efferre, caetrati auxiliaresque nullam, quorum erant et facultates ad parandum exiguae et corpora insueta ad onera portanda. Itaque magnus eorum cotidie numerus ad Caesarem perfugiebat.
3 In his erat angustiis res. Sed ex propositis consiliis duobus explicitius videbatur Ilerdam reverti, quod ibi paulum frumenti reliquerant; ibi se reliquum consilium explicaturos
4 confidebant. Tarraco aberat longius; quo spatio plures rem posse casus recipere intellegebant. Hoc probato con-

silio ex castris proficiscuntur. Caesar equitatu praemisso, qui novissimum agmen carperet atque impediret, ipse cum legionibus subsequitur. Nullum intercedebat tempus quin extremi cum equitibus proeliarentur.

The difficulties of a retirement under these conditions.

Genus erat hoc pugnae. Expeditae cohortes novissimum 79
agmen claudebant pluresque in locis campestribus subsi-
stebant. Si mons erat ascendendus, facile ipsa loci natura 2
periculum repellebat, quod ex locis superioribus qui ante-
cesserant suos ascendentes protegebant: cum vallis aut 3
locus declivis suberat neque ii, qui antecesserant, morantibus opem ferre poterant, equites vero ex loco superiore in aversos tela coiciebant, tum magno erat in periculo res.
Relinquebatur ut, cum eius modi locis esset appropinqua- 4
tum, legionum signa consistere iuberent magnoque impetu equitatum repellerent, eo summoto repente incitati cursu sese in valles universi demitterent atque ita transgressi
rursus in locis superioribus consisterent. Nam tantum ab 5
equitum suorum auxilio aberant, quorum numerum habebant magnum, ut eos superioribus perterritos proeliis in medium reciperent agmen ultroque eos tuerentur: quorum nulli ex itinere excedere licebat quin ab equitatu Caesaris exciperetur.

The enemy, by halting and then hurrying on, vainly attempt to shake off the Caesarians.

Tali dum pugnatur modo, lente atque paulatim proce- 80
ditur, crebroque, ut sint auxilio suis, subsistunt: ut tum
accidit. Milia enim progressi IIII vehementiusque peragi- 2
tati ab equitatu montem excelsum capiunt ibique una fronte contra hostem castra muniunt neque iumentis onera depo-
nunt. Ubi Caesaris castra posita tabernaculaque constituta 3
et dimissos equites pabulandi causa animum adverterunt,

sese subito proripiunt hora circiter sexta eiusdem diei et
spem nacti morae discessu nostrorum equitum iter facere
4 incipiunt. Qua re animum adversa Caesar eductis legioni-
bus subsequitur, praesidio impedimentis paucas cohortes
relinquit; has hora x. subsequi, pabulatores equitesque
revocari iubet. Celeriter equitatus ad cotidianum itineris
5 officium revertitur. Pugnatur acriter ad novissimum agmen,
adeo ut paene terga convertant, compluresque milites, etiam
non nulli centuriones, interficiuntur. Instabat agmen
Caesaris atque universum imminebat.

They encamp in an unfavourable position. Caesar refrains from attacking but begins to invest their camp (July 29–31).

81 Tum vero neque ad explorandum idoneum locum castris
neque ad progrediendum data facultate consistunt necessario
2 et procul ab aqua et natura iniquo loco castra ponunt. Sed
isdem de causis Caesar, quae supra sunt demonstratae,
proelio non lacessit. Eo die tabernacula statui passus non
est, quo paratiores essent ad insequendum omnes, sive
3 noctu sive interdiu erumperent. Illi animadverso vitio
castrorum tota nocte munitiones proferunt castraque castris
convertunt. Hoc idem postero die a prima luce faciunt
totumque in ea re diem consumunt. Sed quantum opere
processerant et castra protulerant, tanto aberant ab aqua
longius, et praesenti malo aliis malis remedia dabantur.
4 Proxima nocte aquandi causa nemo egreditur ex castris;
proximo die praesidio in castris relicto universas ad aquam
5 copias educunt, pabulatum emittitur nemo. His eos
suppliciis male haberi Caesar et necessariam subire dedi-
tionem quam proelio decertare malebat. Conatur tamen
eos vallo fossaque circummunire, ut quam maxime repenti-
nas eorum eruptiones demoretur; quo necessario descen-
6 suros existimabat. Illi et inopia pabuli adducti et, quo

essent ad id expeditiores, omnia sarcinaria iumenta interfici iubent.

Aug. 1. *The enemy offer battle in order to prevent Caesar from continuing the investment. Caesar draws up his troops but still declines to take the offensive.*

In his operibus consiliisque biduum consumitur: tertio 82
die magna iam pars operis Caesaris processerat. Illi impediendae reliquae munitionis causa hora circiter VIIII. signo dato legiones educunt aciemque sub castris instruunt.
Caesar ab opere legiones revocat, equitatum omnem con- 2
venire iubet, aciem instruit; contra opinionem enim militum famamque omnium videri proelium defugisse magnum
detrimentum adferebat. Sed isdem causis, quae sunt 3
cognitae, quo minus dimicare vellet, movebatur, atque hoc etiam magis, quod spati brevitate etiam in fugam coniectis adversariis non multum ad summam victoria iuvare poterat.
Non enim amplius pedum milibus duobus a castris castra 4
distabant. Hinc duas partes acies occupabant duae; tertia
vacabat ad incursum atque impetum militum relicta. Si 5
proelium committeretur, propinquitas castrorum celerem superatis ex fuga receptum dabat. Hac de causa constituerat signa inferentibus resistere, prior proelio non lacessere.

The disposition of either army. They remain under arms all day, but do not fight. Aug. 2. *Unsuccessful attempt of the Pompeians to cross the Sicoris.*

Acies erat Afraniana duplex legionum V, tertium in 83
subsidiis locum alariae cohortes obtinebant; Caesaris
triplex: sed primam aciem quaternae cohortes ex V legioni- 2
bus tenebant: has subsidiariae ternae et rursus aliae totidem suae cuiusque legionis subsequebantur; sagittarii

funditoresque media continebantur acie, equitatus latera
3 cingebat. Tali modo instructa acie tenere uterque proposi-
tum videbatur: Caesar, ne nisi coactus proelium com-
mitteret; ille, ut opera Caesaris impediret. Producitur
tamen res, aciesque ad solis occasum continentur, inde
4 utrique in castra discedunt. Postero die munitiones insti-



FVNDITOR. (From Trajan's Column.)

tutas Caesar parat perficere; illi vadum fluminis Sicoris
5 temptare, si transire possent. Qua re animadversa Caesar
Germanos levis armaturae equitumque partem flumen
traicit crebrasque in ripis custodias disponit.

The Pompeians capitulate and ask for merciful treatment.

84 Tandem omnibus rebus obsessi, quartum iam diem sine pabulo retentis iumentis, aquae, lignorum, frumenti inopia

colloquium petunt et id, si fieri possit, semoto a militibus loco. Ubi id a Caesare negatum et, palam si colloqui 2 vellent, concessum est, datur obsidis loco Caesari filius Afrani. Venitur in eum locum, quem Caesar delegit. Audiente utroque exercitu loquitur Afranius: non esse 3 aut ipsis aut militibus suscensendum, quod fidem erga imperatorem suum Cn. Pompeium conservare voluerint. Sed satis iam fecisse officio satisque supplici tulisse perpessos omnium rerum inopiam; nunc vero paene ut feras 4 circumretitos prohiberi aqua, prohiberi ingressu, neque corpore dolorem neque animo ignominiam ferre posse. Itaque se victos confiteri; orare atque obsecrare, si qui 5 locus misericordiae relinquatur, ne ad ultimum supplicium progredi necesse habeat. Haec quam potest demississime et subiectissime exponit.

Caesar's answer: he throws the blame on the enemy's leaders and justifies his own position. However, if their army were disbanded, he would exact no further penalty.

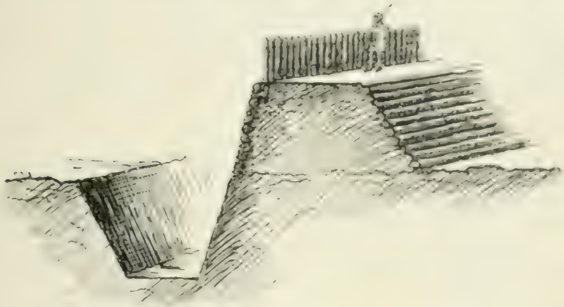
Ad ea Caesar respondit: nulli omnium has partes vel **85** querimoniae vel miserationis minus convenisse. Reliquos 2 enim omnes officium suum praestitisse: se, qui etiam bona condicione, et loco et tempore aequo, confligere noluerit, ut quam integerrima essent ad pacem omnia; exercitum suum, qui iniuria etiam accepta suisque interfectis, quos in sua potestate habuerit, conservarit et texerit; illius denique exercitus milites, qui per se de concilianda pace egerint, qua in re omnium suorum vitae consulendum putarint. Sic omnium ordinum partes in misericordia constitisse: 3 ipsos duces a pace abhorruisse; eos neque colloqui neque indutiarum iura servasse et homines imperitos et per colloquium deceptos crudelissime interfecisse. Accidisse igitur 4 his, quod plerumque hominibus nimia pertinacia atque

arrogantia accidere soleat, uti eo recurrant et id cupidissime
5 petant, quod paulo ante contempserint. Neque nunc se
illorum humilitate neque aliqua temporis opportunitate
postulare, quibus rebus opes augeantur suae; sed eos
exercitus, quos contra se multos iam annos aluerint, velle
6 dimitti. Neque enim sex legiones alia de causa missas in
Hispaniam septimamque ibi conscriptam, neque tot tantas-
que classes paratas, neque summissos duces rei militaris
7 peritos. Nihil horum ad pacandas Hispanias, nihil ad
usum provinciae provisum, quae propter diuturnitatem
8 pacis nullum auxilium desiderarit. Omnia haec iam pridem
contra se parari: in se novi generis imperia constitui, ut
idem ad portas urbanis praesideat rebus et duas bellicosissi-
9 mas provincias absens tot annos obtineat; in se iura magi-
stratuum commutari, ne ex praetura et consulatu, ut semper,
sed per paucos probati et electi in provincias mittantur;
in se aetatis excusationem nihil valere, quin superioribus
10 bellis probati ad obtinendos exercitus evocentur; in se uno
non servari, quod sit omnibus datum semper imperatoribus,
ut rebus feliciter gestis aut cum honore aliquo aut certe
sine ignominia domum revertantur exercitumque dimittant.
11 Quae tamen omnia et se tulisse patienter et esse laturum:
neque nunc id agere, ut ab illis abductum exercitum
teneat ipse, quod tamen sibi difficile non sit, sed ne illi
12 habeant, quo contra se uti possint. Proinde, ut esset
dictum, provinciis excederent exercitumque dimitterent;
si id sit factum, se nociturum nemini. Hanc unam atque
extremam esse pacis condicionem.

The enemy gladly accept Caesar's terms.

86 Id vero militibus fuit pergratum et iucundum, ut ex ipsa significatione cognosci potuit, ut, qui aliquid iusti incommodi exspectavissent, ultro praemium missionis ferrent.

Nam cum de loco et de tempore eius rei controversia inferre- 2
tur, et voce et manibus universi ex vallo, ubi constiterant, significare coeperunt, ut statim dimitterentur: neque enim omni interposita fide firmum esse posse, si in aliud tempus differretur. Paucis cum esset in utramque partem verbis 3



DITCH AND WALL OF A FORTIFIED CAMP.

disputatum, res huc deducitur ut ii qui habeant domicilium aut possessionem in Hispania statim, reliqui ad Varum flumen dimittantur: ne quid iis noceatur neu quis invitus sacramentum dicere cogatur a Caesare cavetur.

They ask Caesar to settle disputed questions among themselves. Their army is disbanded (Aug. 3—Sept. 22).

Caesar ex eo tempore, dum ad flumen Varum veniatur, **87**
se frumentum daturum pollicetur. Addit etiam ut, quod quisque eorum in bello amiserit, quae sint penes milites suos, iis qui amiserint restituatur; militibus aequa facta aestimatione pecuniam pro his rebus dissolvit. Quascum- 2
que postea controversias inter se milites habuerunt, sua sponte ad Caesarem in ius adierunt. Petreius atque 3
Afranius cum stipendium ab legionibus paene seditio-

facta flagitarentur, cuius illi diem nondum venisse dicerent,
Caesar ut cognosceret, postulatum est, eoque utrique quod
4 statuit contenti fuerunt. Parte circiter tertia exercitus eo
biduo dimissa duas legiones suas antecedere, reliquas subse-
qui iussit, ut non longo inter se spatio castra facerent, eique
5 negotio Q. Fufium Calenum legatum praefecit. Hoc eius
praescripto ex Hispania ad Varum flumen est iter factum
atque ibi reliqua pars exercitus dimissa est.

NOTES

Introduction B should be read before a start is made with the translation. The duties and privileges of the various Roman magistrates are described in Introduction F. Notices of all persons and places mentioned are to be found in the Index of Proper Names.

CHAPTER I

§ 1. **consulibus.** The consuls for 49 were C. Claudius Marcellus and L. Cornelius Lentulus Crus. One consul at a time acted as President at meetings of the Senate. From what follows it is clear that at this and the subsequent meetings the presiding consul was Lentulus.

tribunorum plebis: i.e. especially M. Antonius and Q. Cassius.

ut . . . referretur, 'for a debate on the terms of the dispatch to be opened in the House.'

§ 2. **de re publica,** 'on the political situation.' Such a general discussion was customary on the day of the inauguration of new consuls.

§ 3. **sin Caesarem respiciant . . . sequantur,** 'but if they should pay regard to Caesar and bid for his favour.'

ut superioribus . . . temporibus: e.g. when they voted on Curio's motion a month previously (see Introd. B, p. 8).

§ 4. **agat lenius,** 'fail to display sufficient firmness'; literally, 'act too moderately.'

CHAPTER II

§ 1. **senatus in urbe . . . aberat.** By entering the city boundaries Pompey would have forfeited the *imperium* which he possessed as proconsul of the Spanish provinces (see Introduction B).

Meetings of the Senate were called in any *templum* or consecrated place at the choice of the magistrate who summoned it. The usual meeting-place had been the Curia Hostilia north of the Forum and of the Comitium. This, however, had been burnt down during the riots which followed the death of Clodius in 52. To take its place a second Curia (destined never to be finished) was at this time being built by Faustus Sulla, son of the dictator.

§ 2. **aliquis**, 'various persons.'

ut, 'as for example.'

M. Marcellus: to be distinguished from the consul for 49; see Index.

§ 3. **duabus legionibus.** At the beginning of 53 Caesar had borrowed from Pompey one legion—the First—to aid him in repairing the losses he had sustained in Gaul through the disaster which befel the troops under Sabinus and Cotta. In May, 50, Pompey and Caesar had each been ordered by the Senate to furnish one legion for service in Parthia. Pompey had accordingly demanded back his First legion from Caesar, and the latter had also been compelled to give up one of his own—the Fifteenth. The Parthian expedition was then abandoned, and the two legions were retained in Italy, probably in Apulia, to be used later against Caesar. Cf. chaps. iv, ix, xiv.

§ 5. **Hi omnes . . . exagitabantur**, 'they were all attacked and subjected to vehement abuse by L. Lentulus, the consul.'

Marcellus: i.e. M. Marcellus.

§ 6. **ante certam diem**: probably July 1, 49; see note on chap. ix: *dies*, in the sense of an appointed day, is regularly feminine.

§ 8. **Intercedit**: a verb preceding two singular subjects is not uncommonly in the singular number.

graves, 'violent,' 'extreme.'

CHAPTER III

§ 1. **evocantur**, 'are summoned to meet outside the city.' But three lines below the word is used in its military sense, 'are called out to serve.'

§ 2. **ordinum**, 'commissions as centurions.'

ex duabus legionibus: see chap. ii, note.

§ 3. **comitium**: the space on the north of the Forum, between the Rostra and the Curia, commonly used for assemblies.

evocatis, 'reservists'; men who had served their full time (from sixteen to twenty campaigns), and had, when called upon, joined the colours again of their own free will: they received higher pay and possessed special privileges.

§ 5. **vero**, like *denique*, is used to mark a climax. Cf. chap. ii.

§ 6. **sex dies . . . spati.** An unusual inversion for *spatium sex dierum*. *Spati* is a so-called 'partitive' genitive, i.e. a genitive of the 'whole' of which the *sex dies* are a part. The shortest distance by road from Rome to Ravenna was probably about 230 English miles. To go there and back in six days would involve travelling about eighty miles a day, and this appears to have been rather above the average pace for an express messenger of the period. A day's march for a legion was about fifteen miles: a forced march, about twenty miles.

CHAPTER IV

§ 1. **Omnibus his . . . opponitur**, 'one and all encounter opposition and are met by speeches from the consul (Lentulus), from Scipio, and from Cato.' Alike in philosophy as a Stoic, and in politics as a Republican of the old school, Cato was bitterly opposed to Caesar. In the light of after events we can see that he was somewhat short-sighted and narrow-minded, but his honesty and unswerving faithfulness to his cause, even when he saw that it was a lost one, will always command men's admiration. Cf. his character as portrayed by Lucan (*Pharsalia*, ii. 125 seq.).

§ 2. **dolor repulsae.** Cato had been an unsuccessful candidate for the consulship of 51.

regum appellandorum largitionibus, 'by the bribes to be obtained for granting the title of *rex*.' Subject princes were sometimes allowed this title by the Senate, and were willing to bribe the provincial governors to help them to obtain it. In later years Herod the Great was given the title by Augustus, and

several of his sons were anxious for it. Compare the parable of the nobleman who 'went into a far country (Rome) to receive for himself a kingdom, and to return.'

ad quem . . . redeat, 'to whom the chief power in the state would fall.' In 63 P. Cornelius Lentulus Sura had been encouraged to join Catiline's conspiracy, by a prophecy in the Sibylline books that three Cornelii should become lords of Rome. Two had already done so (L. Cornelius Cinna 87–84, L. Cornelius Sulla 82–79), and he hoped to prove himself to be the third (Sallust, *Catiline* 47). He was arrested and executed, but now his fellow tribesman, L. Cornelius Lentulus, seems to have been inspired with like hopes.

§ 3. **necessitudine.** In 52 Pompey had married Scipio's daughter Cornelia, his previous wife Julia, Caesar's daughter, having died in 54.

iudiciorum metus, 'fear of prosecution,' probably for bribery in connexion with his candidature for the consulship.

ostentatio sui, 'his boastful self-confidence.'

§ 4. **quod neminem . . . volebat**: cf. Lucan i. 125:

nec quemquam iam ferre potest Caesarve priorem
Pompeiusve parem.

illo adfinitatis tempore: i.e. from 59, when Pompey married Caesar's daughter Julia, until her death in 54.

§ 5. **infamia duarum legionum**, 'the scandal arising from the affair of the two legions.' Cf. chaps. ii, ix, xiv.

itinere Asiae. The genitive is a miscellaneous case, and expresses a number of relations which it is very hard to classify. *Asiae* (according to Roby, *Lat. Gram. for Schools*, § 525) is a gen. of the object of the action implied in *iter*: cf. *usus Britanniae*, chap. liv.

CHAPTER V

§ 1. **extremi iuris**, 'their fundamental right.' Dr. Reid points out that Caesar is here overstating his case. Sulla in 88 and 81 had not only clipped the wings of the tribunes in other ways, but had largely restricted the use of the *intercessio*, and had left them merely their original *ius auxili ferendi*, or

right to champion an oppressed individual. The privileges of the tribunes had been restored by Pompey in 70. Cf. chap. vii.

§ 2. **septimo die**: January 7 was the seventh day of office of the new consuls. The tribunes had entered on their duties on December 10.

quod: this refers to *de sua salute cogitare*, and is governed by *respicere ac timere*: 'a course which the notorious revolutionary tribunes of earlier days had not been in the habit of considering seriously till the eighth month of their term of office.' The elections to the tribunate took place about July 10. If the tribunes who had taken office on December 10 were not re-elected in the following July it was high time, if they had made themselves unpopular, to take measures for their personal safety, for, when their period of office expired, they would no longer be sacrosanct. Tiberius Gracchus was murdered in 133, soon after the failure of his attempt at re-election.

§ 3. **ultimum senatus consultum**: this decree gave dictatorial power to the magistrates named, and was practically equivalent to a declaration of martial law. It was passed on various occasions during the last century of the Republic, when individual dictators had ceased to be appointed. Previous occasions had been :—

121	in connexion with		C. Gracchus.
100	,,	,,	Saturninus.
83	,,	,,	Sulla.
63	,,	,,	Catilina.
52	,,	,,	Milo and the murder of Clodius.

senatorum audacia: literally, 'through the boldness of the senators.' Translate, 'the senators never dared to take refuge in this resolution except,' &c. But the reading is very uncertain.

quique . . . ad urbem, 'and the proconsuls who were near the city'; literally, 'those who, in the place of consuls,' 'as deputy consuls.' This clause was added to include Pompey.

§ 4. **biduo excepto comitiali.** Meetings of the Comitia (public assemblies) and of the Senate could not take place at the same time. Certain days were marked with a 'C' in the

calendar, and were set apart for Comitia meetings. The 3rd, 4th, and 7th of January were among them. But on special occasions, if the meetings did not clash, the Senate could sit on a *dies comitialis*, and did so in the present instance on January 7.

gravissime . . . decernitur, 'extremely severe and harsh resolutions were passed.'

§ 5. **si . . . posset**, 'in the hope that a peaceful solution might be possible.'

qua hominum aequitate, 'men's general sense of fairness' (Long): *qua* is here an indefinite adjective (nom. *qui*) agreeing with *aequitate*.

CHAPTER VI

§ 1. **extra urbem**: in order that Pompey might attend: the meetings were probably held in the temple of Apollo to the west of the Capitoline Hill, and just outside the old *pomerium*, or city boundary.

§ 2. **legiones.** By these ten legions Pompey probably meant the seven legions which were under the command of his deputies in the Spanish provinces, the two legions (I and XV) which Caesar had sent from Gaul in 50 (see note on chap. ii), and the troops which Domitius Ahenobarbus was collecting in anticipation of his appointment to succeed Caesar as proconsul in Gaul. Pompey had certainly not ten *legiones paratas* in Italy, although he might have mobilized them in a few weeks if Caesar had delayed his advance.

§ 3. **pro praetore,** 'as propraetor.' Cf. *pro consulibus*, chap. v.

Mauretaniam. There were at this time in Mauretania two separate kingdoms ruled by two brothers, Bocchus and Bogud. The object of the proposed mission of Faustus Sulla was to win their support for Pompey. As a matter of fact Bocchus helped Caesar in the Civil War by invading Numidia.

§ 4. **ut socius sit atque amicus**, 'that he should be granted the title of friend and ally.' Iuba helped the Pompeians in the

Civil War (see Index). After the battle of Thapsus in 46, Caesar joined E. Numidia to the Roman Province of Africa, and gave W. Numidia to Bocchus.

Marcellus = C. Marcellus, one of the consuls for 49.

praesentia: abl. fem. sing. Cf. chaps. xxx, xlii.

Philippus, tribunus plebis. This man was the son of the Philippus mentioned three lines lower down (see Index).

§ 5. **privatis**: i. e. men not possessing the *imperium*, men not at the time in office. Until 52 consuls and praetors had usually proceeded straight to provinces as proconsuls and propraetors as soon as their term of office at Rome expired. By the law passed in 52 it was enacted that five years should elapse after the day on which they laid down office at Rome before they took office in the provinces. This law was disregarded on the present occasion, for Scipio had been consul in 52 and Domitius in 54. The two provinces to be given to ex-consuls are assigned to them rather than to the other ex-consuls mentioned, Philippus and Cotta, because the latter were both connected with the Julian *gens*, and were therefore likely to be partisans of Caesar.

reliquae praetoriae. There were at this time fourteen provinces in all.

Gallia = *Gallia Narbonensis.*

sortes deiciuntur: sc. *in urnam.* The senate decided which provinces were to be given to ex-consuls and which to ex-praetors. The assignment of the different provinces to individual governors was then made either by lot or by mutual agreement. In the present case Caesar gives us to understand that, by a private arrangement on the part of his opponents, Philippus and Cotta were debarred from all chance of election.

§ 6. **praetores** = *praetorii*, ex-praetors.

Neque exspectant. When consuls and praetors had proceeded to provinces immediately after holding office at Rome, their official power was prolonged by a *prorogatio imperii*. But when an interval between the two periods of office occurred, as on this occasion, then a renewal of the *imperium* by a *plebiscitum* became necessary.

superioribus annis refers to any previous occasions on which *privati* had been appointed to govern provinces.

paludatique. The *paludamentum* was a short red mantle, embroidered with gold, worn over armour by a general possessing the *imperium*. After a negative, *ac*, *atque*, *et*, and *-que* often have the force of *sed*. Cf. lxx *omnesque*, lxxiv *armaque*.

§ 7. **Consules ex urbe**, &c. It is difficult to understand why Caesar should say that the consuls had never before left the city. It is true that a law forbidding them to do so had been passed in Sulla's time, but it had frequently been broken. It is probable that the reading is corrupt, and this is the more likely because the reference to the consuls is out of place. They did not leave until January 18. I would tentatively suggest that the words *exeunt Consules* should be omitted, and the full stop removed. The latter part of the sentence would then run, 'but they donned their official cloaks and offered their vows and started from the city; such a thing had never previously occurred.' What follows may be taken as an afterthought. Another irregularity—the conduct of these provincial governors while still in Rome—occurs to Caesar: 'Moreover men who had no *imperium* (*privati*) actually had lictors attending on them in the city and on the Capitoline Hill.' The mention of the Capitol is added probably because the officials offered their vows at the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus.

§ 8. **municipiis**: see Introduction F.

omnia divina . . . permiscentur, 'all law, sacred and secular alike, was thrown into confusion.'

CHAPTER VII

§ 1. **Quibus rebus cognitis**: these words must refer to the events at Rome on January 7, and the passing of the *senatus consultum ultimum*. Caesar left Ravenna on the night of January 11, and no news of later developments could yet have reached him.

apud milites: Caesar had with him at Ravenna the Thirteenth legion only.

obtrectatione laudis suae, 'a desire to depreciate the credit due to himself (Caesar).'

cuius ipse: the relative clause, as often, has a concessive sense; translate 'although he,' &c. Cf. chap. ix *cuius absentis*.

faverit adiutorque fuerit, 'had been zealous in supporting.'

§ 2. **in re publica** must be taken closely with *novum exemplum*, 'a strange precedent in constitutional practice.'

notaretur, 'annulled.' The censors were said *notare aliquem* when they withdrew his right of voting. Caesar regards the tribunes' veto as being suppressed in a similar manner.

superioribus annis: by Pompey in 70; but *quae . . . restituta* is probably an interpolation. For the whole passage see the notes on chap. v.

§ 4. **qui amissa . . . bona**, 'although he was credited with having restored the privileges which they had lost.' *qui* is concessive.

§ 5. **Quotienscumque**: see notes on chap. v.

in perniciosis . . . occupatis, 'to deal with,' &c. Caesar is thinking chiefly of C. Gracchus and Saturninus. By *locis editioribus* are meant the city hills, especially the Capitol and the Aventine, on which the temples stood.

casibus, 'the fates that befel.'

§ 6. **cuius imperatoris**: in translation take *imperatoris* out of the relative clause.

VIIII annis: the whole period of Caesar's Gallic campaigns; as a matter of fact the Thirteenth legion was only levied at the beginning of 57. VIIII *annis* here and *quinque horis* in chaps. xlvi and xlvii are instances of the ablative where we should rather have expected the accusative. The dividing line between time 'within which' and time 'during which' is often indistinct. Compare also *tota nocte*, chap. lxxxi.

rem publicam . . . gesserint, 'served the state.'

proelia secunda, regarded as a single word, can be qualified by another adjective. Cf. *navibus magnis onerariis*, chap. xxvi; *naves longas veteres*, chap. xxx.

omnem Galliam Germaniamque. Perhaps *omnem* should qualify *Galliam* only; but Caesar could claim to have subdued

the German tribes by compelling them to remain east of the Rhine.

§ 7. **initio tumultus.** In May, 50, Caesar had sent the Thirteenth legion from Transalpine Gaul to take the place of the Fifteenth legion in Cisalpine Gaul, when he had dispatched the latter to Italy at the Senate's request. He had probably fixed the head quarters of the Thirteenth at Ravenna about the middle of December, when he saw that immediate action might be necessary ; and at the time he must have sent messengers across the Alps to summon reinforcements. The Thirteenth legion, Plutarch tells us, was at this time considerably above its normal strength, and numbered 5,000 men. Caesar had also with him about 300 cavalry.

reliquae. Caesar's remaining legions were eight in all, and were numbered VI to XII, and XIV. Four of these (probably VIII, X, XII, and XIV) under the command of Fabius, were wintering in Aeduan territory, and four, under Trebonius, among the Belgae (*B. G.* VIII. liv).

CHAPTER VIII

§ 1. **Ariminum** (modern Rimini) is 33 miles south of Ravenna; hence the Via Flaminia led to Rome and the Via Aemilia to Placentia. Twelve miles north of Ariminum there flows into the Adriatic the Fiumicino, a little stream which, from the red gravel found in its bed, is usually identified with the ancient Rubico which formed the boundary between Caesar's province of Cisalpine Gaul and the district of Umbria in Italy proper. Caesar dismisses in two words the march which to later writers was so favourite a theme upon which to enlarge.

reliquas legiones . . . evocat. Stoffel points out that, inasmuch as the Twelfth legion reached Caesar in the territory of Picenum on February 5, orders to start must have reached its commander before the end of December. The nearest point in the Aeduan territory is over 600 miles by road from the north of Picenum. Caesar had probably already given orders for some of his troops to move south, and now sent a more urgent message to hurry them up.

§ 2. **Eo L. Caesar.** Caesar reached Ariminum on January 12, and L. Caesar found him there on January 17. It is clear from other sources that the occupation of the neighbouring towns by Caesar's troops was begun as soon as January 12. Caesar, however, proceeds now to describe the negotiations with Pompey carried on through L. Caesar between January 17 and 29. In chapter xi he once more resumes the narrative of his own actions. It must always remain uncertain to what extent this and similar pieces of inexactitude on Caesar's part are intentional.

Is reliquo sermone, &c. Supply *de ea re* after *confecto*: 'after finishing what he had to say on the special object of his mission.' This object was probably to deliver to Caesar dispatches from the Senate containing their resolutions of January 7.

privati offici mandata, 'a message on the subject of their personal relations' (Long).

§ 3. **in suam contumeliam vertat.** 'regard as a personal insult.'

et studium . . . dimittere. 'to let neither his ambition nor his resentment stand in the way of the public interest.' *rei publicae* is a dative of advantage.

cum illis nocere se speret. 'while he hoped that he was damaging them.' The present infinitive is here perfectly correct.

§ 4. **cum . . . coniuncta,** 'to accompany Pompey's excuses.'

CHAPTER IX

§ 1. **idoneos nactus,** &c., 'finding suitable messengers to convey his wishes.'

ne graventur, 'to be good enough to.'

§ 2. **populi Romani beneficium,** 'the privilege granted to him by the people of Rome.' This privilege was that conferred in 52 by the *plebiscitum* which allowed Caesar to stand for the consulship in his absence. See Introduction B, p. 6.

per contumeliam, 'as an affront.' Translate, 'he was annoyed at the affront put upon him by his opponents through the rude withdrawal of the privilege,' &c.

semestri imperio. In the ordinary course of events Caesar had hoped to hold his command until January, 48, when he could be succeeded by one of the consuls for 49: see Introduction, p. 7. The prospect of such a successor had been removed by the law of 52 — (*b*) on p. 6. And now by the resolution of January 2, 49 (ineffectually vetoed by Antonius and Cassius), Caesar had been ordered to disband his troops *ante certam diem* (chap. ii). The phrase *semestri imperio* used here would seem to indicate that this *certa dies* was July 1.

cuius absentis: a concessive clause. Cf. chap. vii *cuius ipse*.

§ 4. **legiones II**: cf. chaps. ii, iv, xiv.

Quonam . . . pertinere? Questions in the middle of a speech, when there is no verb of asking close at hand, are usually put into the infinitive in reported speech if they are in the 1st or 3rd person; into the subjunctive if they are in the 2nd person. See Revised Latin Primer, §§ 462–3.

§ 5. **Sed tamen ad omnia . . . causa**, 'however, to save his country he was ready to have recourse to every expedient, and to put up with every kind of loss.'

in suas provincias: i. e. *Hispania citerior* and *ulterior* (see Introduction B).

metus e civitate . . . permittatur, 'let the state be freed from suspense, let there be no improper influence at the elections, and let the whole conduct of the government be left in the hands of the senate and people.'

CHAPTER X

§ 1. **Caesare**: i. e. L. Caesar.

Capuam. Before continuing the description of his own advance, Caesar tells us the result of his message and the answer which he received. The consuls had fled from Rome on January 18 (chap. xiv). L. Caesar overtook them, and Pompey as well, on January 23, not actually at Capua, but at Teanum Sidicinum, about sixteen miles north-west of that town. We learn this from Cicero, who met L. Caesar on the morning

of the interview and afterwards wrote to Atticus his opinion of Pompey's answer (Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 14).

§ 2. **respondent.** Pompey's answer reached Caesar at Ariminum on January 29.

CHAPTER XI

§ 1. **ipsum . . . tenere.** *ipsum = Pompeium.* The acc. and inf. depends upon *erat iniqua condicio.* By *legiones alienas* Caesar of course means legions I and XV (cf. chap. ii). It is true that legion I had belonged to Pompey, but they had both been requisitioned by the Senate for a special purpose.

dilectus habere : *ipsum* must be supplied before *dilectus*.

§ 2. **peracto consulatu Caesaris.** The reading is doubtful : if it is taken as correct, it would seem to imply that Pompey was prepared to allow Caesar to stand for and obtain the consulship for 48, even though he were absent at the time of the election ; it would appear, however, that in return Pompey only gave a vague promise to go to Spain some time, and Caesar suspected that he would remain in Italy until the end of his own (Caesar's) consulship. But perhaps Caesar uses *consulatus* loosely to denote his term of office as proconsul.

nulla tamen . . . obstrictus, 'under no obligation and guiltless of a breach of faith' : literally, 'bound by no scruples of breach of faith.'

§ 3. **vero** marks the climax. Cf. chap. iii.

adferebat : the subjects are *dare* and *polliceri*.

§ 4. **Itaque.** This disposition of troops actually took place earlier : see note on chap. viii.

Arretium (Arezzo), on the south slopes of the Apennines, commanded the Via Cassia, which led straight through Etruria to Rome, 130 miles away. Sixty miles of difficult mountainous country separated Arretium from Ariminum.

Pisaurum (Pesaro), Fanum Fortunae (Fano), and Ancona are distant respectively 21, 29, and 58 miles south-east of Ariminum.

CHAPTER XII

§ 1. **Iguvium** (Gubbio) is about fifty miles from Fanum. It was close to and commanded the Via Flaminia, which led from Rome to Fanum and then along the coast to Ariminum.

praetorem = *praetorium*: cf. chap. vi, note.

cohortibus v: these cohorts, and likewise those of Attius mentioned a few lines down, must have consisted of recruits hurriedly enlisted.

§ 3. **praesidiis**: these, of course, were Arretium, Fanum, Ancona, and Iguvium.

Auximum (Osimo) was a strongly fortified town on a hill ten miles inland from Ancona.

CHAPTER XIII

§ 1. **sui iudici rem non esse**, 'that the question was not one for them to settle,' 'it was not for them to determine the rights of the case': literally, that the matter did not form part of their judgement, i.e. of what they could judge. Cf. chap. xxxv *neque sui iudici neque suarum esse virium*; Cic. *Fin.* ii. 12. 36 *si quid mei iudici est.*

neque se neque: the first *neque* has the sense of 'but not'.

§ 3. **ex primo ordine**: *ordo* here = century; the *primus ordo* of a legion was the leading century of the first maniple of the first cohort.

§ 4. **primi pili centurio.** This was the highest position to which a centurion could attain. The *primus pilus* was the first maniple of the first cohort of a legion. It was divided into two *centuriae*, each commanded by a *centurio*. The senior of these should correctly be designated *primi pili centurio prior*, but *prior* is regularly omitted. See also Introduction G and note on chap. xlvi.

qui hunc ordinem . . . duxerat, 'who had previously filled the same position (lit., led the same century) in Pompey's army.' These hastily embodied cohorts are not regarded as part of Pompey's army.

CHAPTER XIV

§ 1. **Quibus rebus.** Once more (cf. chap. viii) the order of Caesar's narrative is misleading. The events of chapter xiii have brought us as far as about February 3. But the panic at Rome and flight of the magistrates took place a fortnight before. By *quibus rebus*, therefore, we must understand Caesar's descent upon Ariminum and dispatch of troops to occupy the neighbouring towns.

aerarium. The state-treasury was situated in the basement of the Temple of Saturn, at the foot of the Clivus Capitolinus. The *aerarium sanctius* formed a reserve fund containing in the form of gold ingots the proceeds of the five per cent. tax paid by slave-owners to the state on the value of the slaves whom they set free.

senatus consulto : see chap. vi.

§ 3. **legiones** : cf. chaps. ii, iv, ix.

§ 4. **Capua**, the chief city in Campania, was on the Via Appia, about 130 miles south-east of Rome. The site is now occupied by Santa Maria di Capua Vetere, and the modern town of Capua is a few miles to the north-west.

lege Iulia. In 59 Caesar, then consul, with the support of Pompey and Crassus, and in spite of the opposition of the other consul Bibulus and of the aristocratical party, had carried a law for the division of public land in Campania into allotments for poor citizens. These citizens included many of Pompey's veterans.

gladiatoresque. Caesar had probably established this school for training gladiators with the proceeds of some of his earlier Gallic campaigns, with a view to retaining his popularity with the democratic party by providing them with amusements. Gladiators were for the most part either slaves, criminals, or men of no character, and the general sense of propriety was offended at the idea of employing them against Roman citizens. They had, however, been so employed by adventurers such as Milo and Clodius.

§ 5. **suis**, 'his friends.'

conventus: this was a technical term to denote a confederation or association of Roman citizens in a colony or in a province.

Campani here is used as the adjective of Capua. For the alliteration in this sentence cf. note on *cotidiana*, chap. xl.

CHAPTER XV

§ 1. **praefecturae**: see Introduction F.

§ 2. **Cingulo**: this place (now Cingoli) is fifteen miles south-west of Auximum.

Labienus (see Index) had been tampered with by Pompey during 50, and seems finally to have deserted Caesar at the very beginning of 49. Cicero tells us that Labienus reached Rome soon after the flight of the consuls, and followed them south, reaching Teanum on January 22. We do not know the reasons for his desertion, and Caesar does not vouchsafe to explain or criticize his old lieutenant's action.

§ 2. **legio xii**: see note on chap. viii.

§ 3. **Cum his duabus**, sc. *legionibus*, i.e. the Twelfth and Thirteenth.

Asculum Picenum (Ascoli Piceno) is about fifty miles south of Auximum by road.

x cohortibus. These troops also must have consisted of hastily raised recruits; they are therefore spoken of as ten cohorts and not as a single united legion.

§ 4. **ipsum dimittit**, 'and dismissed their commander.' Lentulus, though superseded on this occasion, reappears in a few days at Corfinium and takes a prominent part in the negotiations there.

§ 5. **Camerinum** (Camerino) is an Umbrian hill-town thirty-five miles south-west of Auximum.

§ 6. **Corfinium**: see Index.

magnis itineribus: probably about twenty miles a day.

§ 7. **Alba** (in full *Alba Fucentia*, modern Albe) is twenty miles west of Corfinium.

CHAPTER XVI

§ 1. **Firmum** (Fermo) is twenty miles north of Asculum: probably Caesar had occupied it on his way south.

expulsoque Lentulo: sc. *Asculo.* This was only true figuratively, for we were told in the last chapter that Lentulus had fled on hearing of Caesar's approach.

ibi probably means at Asculum, the position, that is, which Lentulus had evacuated.

Corfinium is about fifty-five miles in a straight line south-south-east of Asculum, but the country is difficult and there seems to have been no direct route. Stoffel (followed by Peskett) makes the distance 103 miles, but the détour can hardly have been so long as that.

§ 2. **fluminis**: this is the R. Pescara three miles to the north. The bridge was doubtless close to the modern Popoli.

interrumpebant, 'were in the act of destroying.'

milia passuum circiter iii. One *passus* = 5 Roman feet = 4 English feet $10\frac{1}{4}$ inches. A *passus* was equivalent to two regulation steps in quick time—to the distance, that is, from the point at which a soldier's heel was raised to the point at which the same heel was put down again. A Roman mile therefore measured about 1618 yards.

CHAPTER XVII

§ 1. **in Apuliam.** Pompey had moved early in February from Campania into north Apulia to join the two legions (I and XV) which were awaiting him there. He had made his head quarters at Luceria (Lucera), about ninety miles south of Corfinium. There is no straight route, and it must have taken mounted messengers two full days to make the journey.

petant atque orent, 'earnestly to entreat.' See also *orare atque obsecrare*, chaps. xxii, lxxxiv.

duobus exercitibus: i. e. those of Domitius and Pompey. *Exercitus* is commonly regarded as an instrument rather than as a personal agent, and there is therefore no preposition. Domitius ruined Pompey's chances of success by attempting to hold Corfinium instead of joining his leader at Luceria.

locorum angustiis, 'the difficult character of the country.' The table-land round Corfinium is approached only by defiles through the surrounding hills.

§ 2. **cohortes amplius xxx.** After *amplius*, *plus*, and *minus* the conjunction *quam* is often omitted before numerals, but the construction is the same as though *quam* were there, e.g. *milites plus ducenti*. Stoffel calculates the forces at Corfinium as follows. We know from Appian that Domitius brought with him from Rome 4000 men (twelve cohorts) whom he had been collecting to take with him to Gaul (cf. note on chap. vi). He had collected twenty cohorts in the neighbourhood of Corfinium and had been joined there by Vibullius Rufus with thirteen more (chap. xv). Of this total of forty-five cohorts, seven under Lucretius and Attius were stationed at Sulmo (chap. xviii), and six under Manlius at Alba (chap. xxiv), leaving thirty-two as the main body at Corfinium. These thirty-two, according to Stoffel, probably contained a total of about 12,000 men.

equitum Romanorum. Originally a distinguished division of the Roman army, consisting at first entirely of patricians, and later of wealthy men, the Equites had long lost their military position. In 122 C. Gracchus, by granting to them the right to sit on juries—a right previously confined to senators—had given them a very influential position in the state. The qualification for belonging to the *ordo equester* was the possession of property to the value of 400,000 *sestertii* (£3,500).

§ 4. **ex suis possessionibus.** Moberley and other editors point out that Domitius had been granted large estates by Sulla.

pro rata parte. Centurions and *evocati* received double the pay of privates. Cf. Introduction G.

CHAPTER XVIII

§ 1. **Sulmonenses, quod oppidum,** 'the people of Sulmo (see Index) a town which.' A loose, but quite intelligible, construction, the converse of which occurs in *B. C.* III. lxxx *Gomphos pervenit . . . quae gens*, 'he came to Gomphi . . . now the people of Gomphi.'

quod . . . abest; qui . . . tenebant: these are explanatory notes added by Caesar, and do not form part of the oratio obliqua; hence the indicative. Cf. chap. li *qui iter habebant*.

Attio Paeligno: this officer, a native of the district, must be distinguished from Attius Varus, chap. xii.

§ 2. **signa**: see Introduction G. The *signa* were not flags, but effigies of some kind fixed to long staffs.

§ 5. **Eo triduo**: abl. of time within which. Cf. chaps. xli, lxxxvii *eo biduo*.

legio viii: this legion, as well as the Twelfth, had no doubt been under Fabius's command in Aeduan territory. Cf. notes on chaps. vii and viii.

cohortesque ex novis Galliae dilectibus xxii: these were doubtless troops rapidly levied during January in Cisalpine Gaul, and not yet formed into legions.

ab rege Norico: Noricum (see Index) was a friendly state adjoining Cisalpine Gaul, and Caesar had presumably sent there to ask for help. In 58 the king was Voccio (whose daughter was married to Caesar's German enemy Ariovistus), but whether he was still reigning is uncertain.

Quorum adventu. Caesar's army had rapidly multiplied. He had reached Ariminum on January 12 with one legion: now, February 17, he had three legions (XIII, XII, VIII) and more than thirty disconnected cohorts, if we count the seven from Sulmo, and the various troops which had joined him on his march. These cohorts he soon organized into three regular legions: cf. chap. xxv. The whole force under his command now amounted, according to Stoffel, to about 23,000 men, as against the 12,000 under Domitius (see note on chap. xvii).

CHAPTER XIX

§ 1. **Litteris perlectis.** The actual dispatch, dated Luceria, February 17, is preserved among Cicero's correspondence (*Att.* viii. 12 D). In it Pompey reminds Domitius that he had previously advised him to come south, and says that, with the few and somewhat untrustworthy troops at his disposal, he is not prepared to risk coming north himself. He advises Domitius to break out and join him as soon as possible. There is also extant another of Pompey's letters (*Att.* viii. 12 A), written on the same day to the consuls at Capua, from which we learn that no

reinforcements had yet reached him. He had with him only the two legions (I and XV) which he had found waiting for him in Apulia, and from these several cohorts had been detached to act as garrisons at Canusium and Brundisium. Pompey had already made up his mind that he would have to fall back on Brundisium and transport all his forces to Dyrrachium. In both letters one is struck by the extremely moderate language in which he writes of Domitius's failure to support him. Considering that Domitius had ruined his chances of success in Italy, one would have expected something more severe. Domitius, however, was a person of some consequence, and Pompey may have feared that abuse might cause him to desert.

dissimulans, 'he suppressed the truth.' Note the familiar distinction: *quod non est simulo, dissimuloque quod est.*

parent: sc. *ut* from the previous *ne.*

§ 4. **si qua fuisset facultas**: *fuisset* = *fuerit* of primary sequence; Latin is more correct than English in its use of tenses; the opportunity must have occurred before Domitius could take advantage of it. We should say, 'If any chance should occur.'

Id ne fieri posset . . . fiebat, 'the progress with the blockade and investment of the town were making such a course impossible.' The repetition of *fieri . . . fiebat* is a mark of careless and hasty writing: however *fieri potest* is almost one word—a very frequent combination.

CHAPTER XX

§ 1. **secessionem faciunt**, 'hold a private meeting.'

ita inter se . . . colloquuntur, 'the tribunes and centurions and the most influential of the rank and file acted as spokesmen for the rest, and this was the general drift of their arguments.'

§ 2. **cuius spe atque fiducia**, 'in hopeful reliance on whom' (Peskett).

§ 3. **Marsi**: cf. chap. xv.

quae . . . videretur, 'such part of the town as seemed.' The subjunctive is consecutive.

§ 4. **de L. Domiti fuga.** 'the truth about Domitius's (contemplated) flight.'

cognoscunt: the subject is the Marsi, who had previously not fully understood Domitius's attitude.

CHAPTER XXI

§ 1. **magni interesse**: either genitive of value (*Revised Lat. Prim.*, § 292) or, more probably, locative.

animi confirmatione, 'a revival of courage.'

parvis . . . intercederent. 'important results are brought about by trivial accidents.'

§ 3. **vigiliis stationibusque**: *vigiliae* correspond to modern sentries and patrols; *stationes* to pickets and outpost companies: cf. chap. lix, note.

ut contingant inter se. 'within touching distance of one another,' 'so that they could join hands.' The phrase 'in touch with one another' does not represent what is meant. All sentries should be that: but these were as close together as the men in the slips when a fast bowler is on.

omnem munitionem, 'the whole line of investment.'

§ 5. **Neque vero . . . conquieverit.** The perfect subj. in a consecutive clause after a perfect ind. is uncommon in Caesar: one can perhaps bring it out in translation, 'and not a soul was so careless or indifferent as to have gone to sleep on that night.'

§ 6. **tanta erat . . . exciperent.** 'and in his anxiety about the result every man's whole nervous system was on the rack through uncertainty as to what was happening to . . . and as to what fate was in store for any given person.'

CHAPTER XXII

§ 1. **Quarta vigilia**: probably 'at the beginning of the fourth watch', which lasted at this time from about 5.30 to 7 a.m. See Note on the Calendar.

§ 2. **deducatur**: the subjunctive is used to show the purpose of the escort. They took care not to leave him until he was

safely brought into Caesar's presence. Cf. chap. xli *prius . . . quam intellegeretur*; chap. liv *prius quam . . . sentiatur*.

§ 3. **orat atque obsecrat**: cf. xvii, lxxxiv.

§ 4. **collegium pontificum**: see Introduction F. Caesar was *Pontifex Maximus* from 63 until his death. Lentulus was a *pontifex* from 57 to 54.

ex praetura, 'at the close of his praetorship.' Lentulus was praetor in 60, and propraetor of Hispania Citerior in 59. Caesar returned to Rome from his propraetorship of Hispania Ulterior in the summer of 60, and must have used his influence in Lentulus's favour.

consulatus: Lentulus was consul in 57. Caesar was absent in Gaul during the elections in the previous summer, but no doubt his agents worked for L. The latter very soon afterwards went over to the senatorial party.

§ 5. **in suam dignitatem**, 'to the honourable position which was theirs by right.'

factione paucorum, 'a small clique.'

§ 6. **sua salute . . . suam spem**: the two possessives are emphatic; 'the satisfactory answer which *he* had obtained would encourage the others to be hopeful for *themselves*.'

suae vitae durius consulere: a euphemism for committing suicide; lit. 'to adopt severe measures against one's own life.'

CHAPTER XXIII

§ 2. **L. Caecilius Rufus.** If this reading is correct, as it seems to be, it is curious that no mention is made of the capture of L. Vibullius Rufus, who was apparently a senator, and was certainly among the important prisoners at Corfinium. See chaps. xv, xxxiv, and *B. C.* III, chap. x.

§ 4. $\overline{\textbf{HS}}\ \overline{\textbf{lx}}$ = sestertium sexagies = sestertiorum centena milia sexagies = 6,000,000 sesterces = 2·1*d.* × 6,000,000 = £52,500. A *sestertius* (sc. *nummus*) was a small silver coin originally equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ *asses*; hence the name, an abbreviation of *semistertius nummus*, i. e. a coin whose symbol read I I S, the third figure being S(emis). The first two strokes were soon connected, and the abbreviation became HS. In dealing with

thousands of sesterces the Romans used the neuter plural form *sestertia*, and qualified it by either the cardinal or the distributive numerals, e.g. *decem* or *dena sestertia* = 10,000 sesterces. In dealing with hundreds of thousands of sesterces a neuter singular form *sestertium* (originally a genitive plural) was employed, and qualified by the numeral adverbs, e.g. *decies sestertium* = 1,000,000 sesterces.

The abbreviation HS was used for all three forms, but usually

$\text{HS lx} = \text{sexaginta sestertii} = 60 \text{ sesterces}$

$\text{HS } \overline{\text{lx}} = \text{sexagena sestertia} = 60{,}000 \text{ sesterces}$

$\overline{\text{HS}}\ \overline{\text{lx}} = \text{sexagies sestertium} = 6{,}000{,}000 \text{ sesterces}$

The sesterce at this time was worth about 2·1*d.*

quattuorviris: the chief magistrates of a *municipium* (*quattuorviri*) were composed of two pairs of *duumviri*, one of higher standing than the other. Cf. chap. xxx.

reddit: Cicero's friend M. Lepidus was under the impression that this money was not restored (Cic. *ad Att.* viii. 14). Caesar may have had his reasons for allowing himself a convenient lapse of memory, but it is more probable that Lepidus was mistaken.

continentior . . . fuisse, 'to have shown more self-restraint' (Long).

publicam, 'belonged to the state funds.' Caesar implies that his act was dictated purely by courtesy: the money was not part of Domitius's private fortune, and Caesar was under no obligation to restore it.

5. **vii omnino dies**: February 15–21.

CHAPTER XXIV

§ 1. **his rebus cognitis.** Again (cf. chaps. vii, xiv) Caesar's version of the sequence of events has to be corrected by reference to Cicero's correspondence. Pompey left Luceria on February 16, when the most that he could have heard was that Caesar's reinforcements had reached him and had completed the investment of Corfinium.

Canusium (Canosa) is about forty-five miles south-east of Luceria.

Brundisium. To get from Luceria to Brundisium (about 165 miles) in eight days (January 18 to 25 inclusive) must have necessitated forced marches every day.

§ 3. **L. Manlius praetor,** &c. : see note on chap. xvii. The first two sentences of chap. xxiv, describing Pompey's retirement, are in the nature of a parenthesis. Caesar now proceeds with the narrative of incidents on his own march south.

signa transferunt . . . transeunt : the meaning of both is practically identical. They occur together again (but with a slight addition) in chap. lx.

§ 4. **Cremona,** 'of Cremona'; ablative of origin: or perhaps the man's full name was Numerius Magius Cremona.

§ 5. **remittit** : this would seem to imply that Magius had come from Pompey. Cf. note on chap. xxvi.

interesse rei publicae. The easiest explanation of the construction after *interesse* is that of Schmalz (quoted by Peskett). He takes the genitive as dependent on some noun (acc. neut. plur.) understood, 'it is among (the advantages) of the state.' Cf. *ad Vestae* = to Vesta's (temple), Hor. *Sat.* i. 9. 35. This explanation covers the use with the possessive pronouns *mea*, *tua*, &c., which will not then be abl. fem. sing., but acc. neu. plur.; *interest mea* = 'it is among my (advantages).'

§ 6. **condiciones . . . condicionibus.** The repetition is probably a mark of hasty writing. The section may be translated freely, 'there were, moreover, advantages to be gained from a full personal discussion of terms, which were lost when the distance of the principals from each other necessitated the employment of third parties.'

CHAPTER XXV

§ 1. **Brundisium.** Caesar's march from Corfinium to Brundisium was probably one of about 270 miles; he started on February 21, and completed it in seventeen days.

legionibus vi. Cf. note on chap. xviii. Caesar's forces had been increased during the last few days by the various cohorts which had joined him during the latter stages of his march (chap. xxiv). He probably drafted these troops into his

existing units in order to raise to war strength both his original three legions and the three additional ones which he had by this time formed. Caesar's whole force at Brundisium is thought to have amounted to about 25,000 or 26,000. The rival armies, therefore, before the consuls sailed, were practically equal in numbers, but the majority of Pompey's men were not to be trusted; further, Caesar's remaining legions would have been able to come from Gaul far sooner than Pompey's from Spain.

§ 2. **Domitianas . . . cohortes.** We gather from various sources that these thirty-two cohorts were sent under the charge of Asinius Pollio, but that two months later Curio was appointed propraetor of Sicily and given command of the troops in the island, which had by that time been organized into three legions. Cf. chap. xxx and note.

a Corfinio, 'from the neighbourhood of Corfinium.'

Dyrrachium is nearly ninety miles from Brundisium. The consuls had probably sailed on March 7. The duration of the crossing would depend chiefly upon the wind, but it seems usually to have taken a day and a half or two days.

cum magna parte exercitus. The consuls had sailed with thirty cohorts. The total forces, therefore, which Pompey and his supporters had succeeded in concentrating at Brundisium consisted of fifty cohorts, besides a few cavalry and auxiliaries — about 30,000 men in all, according to Cicero, but in reality probably rather less. Caesar, as we have seen, in the course of his rapid march through Italy, had succeeded in depriving his opponents of over sixty cohorts, including the thirty-two which capitulated at Corfinium (cf. chaps. xii, xiii, xv, xvii, xviii, xxiv).

§ 3. **quo facilius . . . haberet,** 'the more easily to command the entire Adriatic by using as his bases the Italian coast at its extreme South, and the corresponding district in Greece.' *Ultimis* qualifies both *portibus* and *regionibus*, and refers to the position of Brindisi and Dyrrachium at the very mouth of the Adriatic.

an inopia navium ibi restitisset. Lack of ships was

as a matter of fact, Pompey's only reason for still retaining part of his forces at Brundisium; Caesar was not sure of this, and therefore proceeded to invest the town by land and to blockade the entrance of the harbour. He could not expect, without ships, to make the blockade complete, but his object was to force Pompey into crossing the Adriatic, and if possible to harass him as he started.

§ 4. **exitus administrationesque . . . impedire,** 'to block the entrance and stop ships from entering or leaving the harbour,' literally, 'to block the entrance and working of the harbour': but the phrase is an instance of zeugma, and *impedire* has a slightly different sense with each of its two objects.

§ 5. **Qua fauces erant angustissimae:** the narrowest part of the entrance seems to have been about 380 yards wide at this date.

moles atque aggerem, 'piers surmounted by an embankment.' *moles* denotes particularly the portion under the water, and *agger* indicates the resemblance of the superstructure to the flat rampart round a camp. Traces of Caesar's work have been discovered from which it has been calculated by Stoffel that each of the piers was about eighty yards long, and that they were discontinued when the water reached a depth of eight feet.

§ 6. **rates duplices,** 'double rafts,' probably mean rafts formed by placing one raft on the top of another to give greater steadiness.

e regione, 'in a line with.' Cf. Cic. *de Fato*, ix. 18 *e regione moveri* = 'to move in a straight line.'

§ 9. **terra atque aggere,** 'soil which he formed into an embankment.'

ne aditus atque incursus . . . impediretur, 'to make it easy to pass along them, and double out to the defence.' *Atque* has almost the sense of 'and if need be'. The flat top of the *agger* would be much easier to walk on than the rough logs, and would form a continuation of the embankment built upon the piers.

a fronte atque ab utroque latere. By *a fronte* are meant the ends facing each other across the channel.

cratibus ac pluteis, 'screens composed of hurdles': probably a hendiadys; cf. chap. xxvi *impetus consiliaque*.

§ 10. **in quarta quaque earum.** In chap. xxvii Caesar speaks of the work being nearly half-finished when Pompey's ships returned. If Stoffel's calculations are correct, about twenty-two rafts would have been required in all to bridge the passage between the two piers. The imperfect tenses used all through this passage indicate the incomplete character of the work—the scheme rather than the accomplishment.

turres: these were no doubt small editions of the *turres ambulatoriae* common in siege operations (see Introduction G).

CHAPTER XXVI

§ 1. **naves magnas onerarias**: cf. note on *proelia secunda*, chap. vii.

Ibi = *in eis*; cf. chap. xxvii.

cum ternis tabulatis: an unusual alternative for the genitive or ablative of quality.

§ 2. **ita** followed by *ut* limits the force of *administrabat*: 'all this Caesar did without giving up the idea of the desirability of coming to terms.'

Magium. Among Cicero's correspondence there exists a letter written by Caesar from Brundisium to a friend in which he says that Pompey has sent Magius to him (Caesar), and that he has answered as he thought right. Probably this letter refers to the incident in chapter xxiv. Magius was captured on his way to Caesar (*deprensus ex itinere*): Caesar received his message and sent him back (*remittit*) to Pompey, with a proposal for an interview. He is now surprised that Magius has not been sent back to him.

atque ea res . . . tardabat, 'and although his repeated attempts in this direction had the effect of retarding his schemes for taking the offensive': *impetus consiliaque* form another example of hendiadys; cf. chap. xxv *cratibus ac pluteis*.

omnibus rebus, 'by every means in his power.' Cf. chap. lxxxiv.

§ 3. **ad eum** : i. e. to Scribonius Libo, who was with Pompey's troops in Brundisium.

§ 4. **illo auctore atque agente**, 'at his suggestion and through his means.'

CHAPTER XXVII

§ 1. **diebus . . . viiii**: i. e. March 9-17. The ships had probably been detained at Dyrrachium by adverse winds.

§ 3. **sub ipsa profectione**, 'at the moment of his departure.' When used of time *sub* with the ablative usually means 'at the time of, during'; cf. *sub bruma*, *B. G.* V. xiii. *sub* with the acc. means 'just before'; cf. *sub noctem*, chap. xxviii.

ibi, 'in them.' Cf. chap. xxvi.

§ 4. **Haec . . . inaequat**, 'and he makes it all level with the road by laying on light hurdles covered with earth.' *haec*, neut. plur., embraces the whole arrangement of *fossae*, *sudes* and *stipites*, all lifeless objects. The word *inaequo* occurs nowhere else.

aditus . . . duo, 'the approaches and the two main roads.' The *aditus* were probably over open ground between the houses and the harbour, while the two *itinera* led to the harbour without passing through the city.

maximis . . . praeacutis, 'huge baulks driven deep into the ground, with the projecting ends pointed.' These were much larger obstacles than the *sudes stipitesque*, and no concealment of them was attempted.

§ 5. **expeditos**: 'in light marching order': a soldier was *expeditus* when he had got rid of his pack (*sarcina*); see Introduction G.

§ 6. **expedito loco**, 'at a convenient spot.'

CHAPTER XXVIII

§ 1. **militum iniuriis**. Pompey seems to have allowed his soldiers considerable licence in Brundisium, through fear probably that they would desert if he interfered.

§ 3. **sub noctem**, 'just before night,' 'at night-fall.' Cf. note on chap. xxvii.

§ 4. **vallum caecum**, 'sunk fence': *vallum* usually means a rampart with a palisade on the top; here, of course, it denotes the *sudes stipitesque*.

ad moles: 'had grounded on Caesar's structures.' *moles* ought properly speaking to refer only to the solid portion of the piers, and not to the rafts, but here it may mean either.

scaphis . . . excipiunt, 'they hauled them off with the aid of boats and punts, and then took possession of them.'

CHAPTER XXIX

§ 1. **eius rei**, 'involved in this.'

insequendi sui, 'for pursuit of himself.' The gerundive of deponents is used in the same way as that of ordinary transitive verbs. It is much easier for all practical purposes to treat the gerundive in a case like this as a passive adjective agreeing with *sui*, and *sui* as the genitive depending upon *facultatem*, than to talk about 'gerundive attraction'. The latter explanation merely creates difficulties in a perfectly simple construction.

§ 2. **Relinquebatur ut . . . naves essent exspectandae**, 'such a project involved the absolute necessity of waiting for ships.' Literally, 'the only course open was that ships must be awaited.' *relinquitur ut* in Caesar always has this sense (cf. chaps. lxiii, lxxix). The gerundive here, therefore, is redundant, as is the word 'absolute' in the translation.

§ 3. **veterem exercitum, duas Hispanias**: Pompey's army in Spain consisted of seven legions. Cf. Introduction E, and chaps. vi, xxxviii.

altera . . . devincta: Pompey and Metellus had been in joint command of the war against Sertorius and the remnants of the Marian party in Spain. Metellus bore the brunt of the work, but after the murder of Sertorius in 72 Pompey finished off the war and restored order in Hispania Citerior and obtained the chief credit for the whole.

temptari . . . nolebat, 'he did not want attempts to be made to win over.' Cf. *temptare*, chap. xl.

CHAPTER XXX

§ 1. **in Hispaniam proficisci constituit**: Suetonius tells us that Caesar declared *ire se ad exercitum sine duce, et inde reversurum ad ducem sine exercitu.*

duumviris municipiorum: the senior pairs of the *quattuorviri*: cf. chap. xxiii, note.

naves: for use in January, 48 (*B. C.* III. ii).

§ 2. **Mittit in Sardiniam**, &c. Caesar was naturally anxious to obtain the control of Sardinia and Corsica (which formed one province), Sicily, and Africa, partly because they were in dangerous proximity to Italy, and partly because they were the chief sources of the Roman corn-supplies: cf. Florus ii. 13 *Siciliam et Sardiniam, annonae pignora, per legatos habet*. Caesar hoped to get these arrangements ratified by the Senate during his stay in Rome, but failed to do so: cf. chap. xxxiii. Valerius and Curio were given their authority, therefore, by Caesar himself. The short account of their success which follows breaks the sequence of the narrative. Curio did not land in Sicily until April 22, nor Valerius in Sardinia until May 20.

cum legione una: probably a new legion which Valerius was to levy for himself.

pro praetore: cf. *pro consulibus*, chap. v, note. Curio was granted the title of *propraetor* to give him precedence over Asinius Pollio, who had already been sent to command the troops in Sicily: see chap. xxv and note.

cum legionibus iii. By these Caesar probably means the *Domitianae cohortes* (cf. chap. xxv), the command of which Curio took over on his arrival.

in Africam. The story of Curio's disastrous African campaign is told in *B. C.* II.

Cato had arrived in his province in January or February.

sorte Tubero obtinere debebat, 'Tubero ought properly to have been in command of.' The reason why he was not is explained in the next chapter. For *sorte* cf. note on *sortes deiciuntur*, chap. vi.

§ 4. **naves longas veteres**: cf. note on *[illegible]*, chap. vii.

novas civitatibus imperabat: *civitates* means the communities in Sicily.

§ 5. **fugit**: he at once joined Pompey at Dyrrachium.

CHAPTER XXXI

§ 1. **imperiis,** as often = *magistratibus*: abstract for concrete.

§ 2. **cum imperio Attium Varum**: see chap. xiii. Attius had left Auximum about February 3, and could not have reached Utica until late in the month. The governor whom Tubero was to have succeeded had left the province under the charge of his staff-officer Q. Ligarius. Attius had previously been propraetor in Africa, and on his arrival he took over the command from Ligarius, and, entirely without authority, assumed the *imperium*. This was the situation when Tubero shortly afterwards arrived off Utica. Cicero in 46 successfully defended Ligarius, Attius's accomplice, in an action brought against him by Tubero's son (Cic. *pro Ligario*).

nactus aditus ad ea conanda, 'being afforded facilities for this undertaking.' Cf. the phrase *aditum commendationis*, chap. lxxiv.

ex praetura: cf. chap. xxii.

§ 3. **navibus**: ablative of the instrument or vehicle employed: cf. *curru*, *equo*, &c.: the same use of *navibus* occurs again in chaps. xxxiv, xxxvi.

CHAPTER XXXII

§ 1. **His rebus confectis**: Caesar resumes the narrative from *deducendas curent*, at the beginning of chap. xxx.

ad urbem proficiscitur. Caesar had not been in Rome since the beginning of 58. He probably started on March 18 with a small escort, and reached the city on March 31, and his route, which we can partially trace through Cicero's letters, covered a distance of about 330 miles. On March 28 he interviewed Cicero at the latter's villa at Formiae on the Campanian coast, and

tried vainly to induce him to come with him to Rome and help to negotiate for peace (Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 18). Cicero two months later finally threw in his lot with Pompey, and joined him at Dyrrachium.

§ 2. **Coacto senatu.** Caesar speaks of this meeting as if it had been a full assembly of the senate; but the consuls and a considerable number of senators were with Pompey at Dyrrachium, and many others were scattered about Italy, so that it must have been a very thin gathering.

legitimo tempore. Ten years had to elapse between the end of one term of office as consul and the beginning of the next. Caesar had been consul in 59, and was therefore duly eligible for 48.

§ 3. **Latum ab x tribunis plebis.** See Introduction B. The reference is to the *plebiscitum* marked (*a*) on page 6.

dicendi mora dies extrahente, 'wasting day after day by his obstructive eloquence.' In law courts there was a time-limit for speeches, but there seems to have been none in the Senate.

§ 4. **de exercitibus dimittendis.** The proposal that Pompey and Caesar should give up their armies at the same time was made by Curio, at Caesar's request, during 50; it was carried in the Senate on December 1, disregarded by Pompey, but once more put forward by Caesar in the dispatch to the consuls read in the Senate on January 1, 49. See chap. i, and Introduction B, pp. 7–9.

§ 5. **qui, quod ab altero . . . recusarent**, 'seeing that they declined to do in their own case what they demanded from their opponent'; i. e. to disband their troops: in a causal relative clause the verb is usually in the subjunctive.

§ 6. **in eripiendis legionibus**: cf. chap. ii.

in circumscribendis tribunis plebis: cf. chap. v.

expetita colloquia: cf. chaps. xxiv, xxvi.

§ 7. **hortatur ac postulat**, 'he urged that it was their positive duty': a stronger phrase than *oro atque obsecro*, chaps. xxii, lxxxiv.

rem publicam, 'government.'

illis se oneri non futurum, 'he would cause them no embarrassment': predicative dative.

§ 8. **quod in senatu Pompeius paulo ante dixisset**: probably in answer to the proposals made at Rome early in January to send official envoys to Caesar (chap. iii).

ad quos legati . . . significari: a literal translation is difficult: the general meaning is 'to send envoys (in order to open negotiations) was as much as to admit the strength of one's adversary's position and to betray one's own apprehensions.' *Qui s'excuse, s'accuse.*

ut operibus anteire studuerit, 'just as he had made it his aim to forestall his opponent in the field.' *studuerit* represents the perfect indic. of oratio recta.

CHAPTER XXXIII

§ 3. **triduum**: i. e. April 1–3.

reliquasque res, quascumque agere instituerit. With this conveniently nebulous phrase Caesar dismisses the incident, told at some length by later historians, of his raid upon the state treasury. The cautious remnant of the senate apparently refused to sanction Caesar's appropriation of the public funds, and Metellus actually barred the passage to the *aerarium*, and only gave way when Caesar threatened to kill him.

§ 4. **infectis iis, quae agere destinaverat.** What he had wished to obtain was a legal position as dictator, or at least an official approval of his acts.

ab urbe proficiscitur. His journey probably took from April 7 to 19. The usual route from Rome to Marseilles kept close to the coast almost the whole way, and was about 550 miles in length. Plutarch tells us that on one occasion Caesar travelled from Rome to Arles (50 miles further than Marseilles) in eight days. The distances given in the Antonine Itinerary (quoted by Stoffel) are by no means always correct.

CHAPTER XXXIV

§ 1. **Vibullium Rufum**: cf. chaps. xv, xxxviii.

paucis ante diebus: on February 21. Cf. chap. xxiii.

§ 2. **Domitium**: cf. chaps. xv–xxiii, xxxvi.

Massiliam. Marseilles was an independent state. See Index.

navibus . . . septem: for construction cf. xxxi, note, and xxxvi.

Igili: locative case, Igilium being the name of a small island.

§ 3. **nova Caesaris officia**, 'the recent services of Caesar': see chap. xxxv for the special *officia* referred to, but the pacification of Gaul generally must have been to the advantage of Marseilles.

veterum suorum beneficiorum: see chap. xxxv; Pompey also performed a great service to all ports by clearing the Mediterranean of pirates in 67.

§ 4. **antiquitus erant**, 'had long been'; the imperfect is used here in the same way as it is with *iamdudum*, of what had long been the case and still continued (*Revised Latin Primer*, § 338).

CHAPTER XXXV

§ 1. **xv primos**: the government of Marseilles was carried on by a senate of 600 with an executive committee of fifteen.

Italiae . . . sequi, 'agree to the unanimous verdict of Italy.'

§ 3. **Neque sui . . . decernere**, 'it was no concern of theirs nor were they powerful enough to decide'; for the genitives see chap. xiii, note.

§ 4. **patronos**: many cities and provinces had *patroni* at Rome who looked after their interests. They were something like the modern consuls, but were usually not foreigners but Romans who had some connexion with the communities which they represented. Here, however, the word is used in the general sense of protector or benefactor. It is not known on what occasions Caesar and Pompey conferred these particular benefits on Marseilles.

Sallyas: a Greek accusative; nominative *Sallyes*.

§ 5. **aut urbe aut portibus recipere**, 'to admit into their city or harbours.' Such ablatives (of manner or instrument), instead of accusatives after *in*, are common in Caesar.

CHAPTER XXXVI

§ 1. **Domitius navibus . . . pervenit**: see chap. xxxiv, and for the construction of *navibus* cf. chaps. xxxi, note, and xxxiv. Caesar leaves this bald statement as the best comment upon the assurances of neutrality which had just been given him.

§ 2. **instructis**: sc. *navibus.*

§ 4. **legiones tres.** Originally four of Caesar's legions had been stationed among the Belgae under Trebonius and four among the Aedui under Fabius (cf. chap. vii, note). Stoffel supposes that during December Caesar sent instructions for two of Fabius's legions (XII and VIII) to march south to Italy, for Fabius and his remaining two legions to move to Narbo (cf. chap. xxxvii), for Trebonius and his main force to succeed to Fabius's quarters among the Aedui, and for one of Trebonius's legions to join Fabius at Narbo. The three legions which Caesar now summons to Marseilles are clearly those under Trebonius, whom he leaves in charge of the siege of that town by land.

Arelate: about sixty miles by water from Marseilles.

§ 5. **diebus xxx**: by about April 25.

D. Brutum: this officer had commanded Caesar's fleet in the successful battle against the Veneti in 56 (*B. G.* III. xi–xv).

CHAPTER XXXVII

§ 1. **C. Fabium**: see chap. xxxvi, note.

saltus Pyrenaeos. The passes meant are probably the Col de la Perche close to the sources of the French River Tet and the Spanish River Segre (Sicoris), and the Col du Perthus further east.

§ 2. **Reliquas legiones.** Following Stoffel I take it that these were the three (VIII, XII, and XIII) which Caesar had had with him at Brundisium and had temporarily quartered in South Italy (chap. xxxii). He had probably hoped that his legions under Trebonius and Fabius would be enough for the

Spanish campaign, but he was now compelled to leave the former officer and his troops to besiege Marseilles.

quae longius hiemabant. It must be remembered that although the month was nominally April, yet the season was still late winter (see Note on the Calendar). If the legions had still been in South Italy they would have had to make a journey of at least 1,100 miles—nearly two months' hard marching—to reach Ilerda. Stoffel therefore regards it as probable that Caesar had previously given orders for them to move north, and that they were already in North Italy when the fresh orders reached them. If this was the case they would have been able to reach Fabius by about June 16 (as they appear to have done).

§ 3. **ex saltu deiecit.** The pass which Fabius forced was probably the Col de la Perche (5,321 ft.). He would have marched from Narbo south to the mouth of the Ruscino (Tet), up that river to the Col, and then down the valley of the Sicoris. From Narbo to Ilerda by this route is about 220 miles, and Fabius would have reached the site of his camp about May 20.

CHAPTER XXXVIII

§ 1. **L. Vibulli Rufi:** cf. chap. xxxiv.

unus . . . alter . . . tertius: from what follows it is clear that *unus* = Afranius, *alter* = Varro, and *tertius* = Petreius. The disagreement with the original order of the names is another mark of hurried writing.

Hispaniam citeriorem : this province in the year 49 seems to have comprised most of the north-east and east of Spain as far south as the Saltus Castulonensis, while *Hispania ulterior* consisted of Baetica and Lusitania (see map). The extreme north-west was as yet independent.

a saltu Castulonensi ad Anam : i. e. the whole of Baetica, the basin of the Baetis (Guadalquivir).

pari numero legionum : i. e. with two legions. We are told later that one legion out of this total of seven had been raised in Spain. Such a large force was quite unnecessary for

maintaining order in the Spanish provinces, and Caesar was fully justified in regarding it with suspicion (chap. lxxxv).

§ 3. **toti Lusitaniae . . . imperantur**, 'are levied from the whole of Lusitania.'

§ 4. **ad Ilerdam**, 'in the neighbourhood of Ilerda.' It might have been better tactics to withdraw at once south of the Ebro, but if any stand was to be made to the north the position near Ilerda was an obvious one to choose. The ancient citadel stood upon a hill on the right bank of the Sicoris (Segre) about twenty-five miles from the junction of the latter with the Ebro. The hill is now about 380 feet above the level of the Segre, but was probably then a few feet lower. The sides are steep except to the south-west. It has always been fortified, and at the present time is entirely reserved for the garrison the old cathedral, whose beautiful campanile crowns the citadel, being used for barracks. The modern town of Lérida lies at the foot and on the lower slopes of this hill. The walls of Ilerda, however, could only have contained a small proportion of the Pompeian army, and the main body encamped upon another larger hill (chap. xliii) a little to the south of the town.

CHAPTER XXXIX

§ 1. **scutatae**, 'heavy-armed.' The *scutum* (here carried by Spanish troops) was also the regular shield of the Roman legionaries. It was in shape oblong (about four feet high by two-and-a-half broad) and curved inwards. It was made of wooden staves covered with linen and leather. It had a metal border at the top and bottom, and on the centre of the outside was a metal boss.

caetratae, 'light-armed.' The *caetra* was a small, light, round shield about two feet in diameter, made of wood or wicker-work covered with untanned skin or leather, and often painted. It was carried only by foreign auxiliaries.

cohortes circiter lxxx. Stoffel regards LXXX as a false reading, and would substitute XXX. His reasons are two: (1) that Dion Cassius tells us that Caesar's army in Spain was larger than that of his opponents, (2) that in chapter lxxxiii

Afranius's army is described as drawn up in three lines, two consisting of his legions and one of his auxiliaries, a very unlikely formation if he possessed eighty cohorts of auxiliaries and only fifty of legionaries. Errors in connexion with figures are very common in MSS., and Stoffel's emendation may very likely be correct. The total number of Pompeians depends on the strength of the separate cohorts both legionary and auxiliary. Stoffel reckons the average strength as 400, and makes the total—20,000 legionaries + 12,000 auxiliary infantry + 5,000 cavalry = 37,000. He seems to have no particular reason for regarding the Pompeian cohorts as stronger than those of Caesar, and, if Dion Cassius is to be believed, it is probable that they were somewhat weaker. As a working hypothesis we may consider the total Pompeian strength to have been 35,000.

§ 2. **legiones . . . vi**: i.e. Fabius's three legions and the three from South Italy (chap. xxxvii). Caesar after enumerating the hostile forces encamped near Ilerda proceeds, for convenience' sake, to deal with his own. Unfortunately, however, the text all through the chapter is very uncertain.

equitum iii milia . . . habuerat. Caesar had no Roman cavalry, but at the beginning of his Gallic command he had raised a force of 4,000 cavalry chiefly from Gallia Narbonensis.

parem ex Gallia numerum, quam ipse pacaverat. Probably the words *quae omnibus . . . habuerat* above refer both to *auxilia peditum v milia* and to *equitum tria milia*: the *par numerus* will then mean 5,000 auxiliaries and 3,000 cavalry. The former 8,000 had been enlisted in the provinces to which Caesar originally succeeded, the latter in that large part of Gaul, north of Gallia Narbonensis, *quam ipse pacaverat*—a laconic description of his eight years' work. Altogether therefore Caesar's troops in Spain, as enumerated in this chapter, amounted to six legions, 10,000 auxiliary infantry, and 6,000 auxiliary cavalry. The legions Stoffel reckons to have contained only 20,000 men, but they may quite well have contained a thousand or two more. To this force must be added the 900 cavalry whom Caesar brought with him when he took over the command (chap. xli), and an undefined but probably

small detachment of archers and slingers (chap. lxxiii). Perhaps we may conjecture then that Caesar had roughly 39,000 and the Pompeians 35,000; the exact numbers must always remain uncertain.

ex Aquitanis montanisque, &c. The Provincia proper (Gallia Narbonensis) stretched only as far west as the modern Toulouse. Aquitania comprised the country west of Toulouse and south of the Garonne, and the *montani* must have come from the northern slopes of the Pyrenees in the south-west of Aquitania.

§ 3. **audierat Pompeium.** The text is so uncertain that one cannot be sure of the subject of this sentence and of the rest of the chapter, but it is probably Caesar. The groundless rumour about Pompey was known to many Spanish tribes, and disappointment at its non-fulfilment was one of the causes of their joining Caesar later on (chap. lx).

Simul a tribunis, &c. If Caesar is the subject, the troops whom he paid in this comic-opera fashion were probably those who had come to the siege of Marseilles; but he may have sent orders of a similar nature to Fabius at Narbo, and have also satisfied the claims of Legions VIII, XII, and XIII as they passed Marseilles on their march west. Caesar had increased the regular pay of a private soldier from 120 denarii a year to 225 denarii (about £7 17*s.* 6*d.*). An English infantry private on active service receives about £25 a year, but it is difficult to compare the purchasing powers of the two sums. A Roman soldier's yearly pay was usually issued to him in three instalments. The pay of centurions and *evocati* was double that of privates. What pay, if any, was given to superior officers is not known. Modern generals would hardly be so fortunate as Caesar in finding officers who not only possessed enough money to pay their men, but were actually carrying it with them. There is, however, a parallel action recorded of Germanicus: in A.D. 14, during the mutiny in Germany, he used his own and his officers' money to satisfy the claims of two disaffected legions (Tacitus, *Ann.* i. 37).

§ 4. **voluntates redemit.** Caesar was not often troubled by disaffection on the part of his soldiers, but he was now for

the first time asking them to fight against fellow Romans, and it was just as well to see that they were properly paid for doing it.

CHAPTER XL

§ 1. **temptabat**: cf. chap. xxix, note. Fabius and his three legions had followed the retreating Pompeians down the valley of the Segre until the latter joined their main force near Ilerda. Fabius then proceeded to encamp on the right bank of the Segre a little to the north of Ilerda, and to build two bridges across the river, four Roman miles apart. Stoffel places Fabius's camp and the lower bridge about $1\frac{3}{4}$ miles up stream from Ilerda. The Segre in this district is a swift but somewhat shallow river of varying breadth, studded at intervals with islands. Usually parts of the river-bed are dry, but in flood-time the stream swells with great rapidity. At the present time, at Lérida itself, the Segre is 170 yards broad from bank to bank, but the water usually only covers half this width. The remainder is used as a drying-ground by laundresses; but the river is capable of claiming its full rights with so little warning that it sometimes carries away most of the local clean shirts. Such floods are especially common in the summer months.

milia passuum iiii: about $3\frac{3}{5}$ English miles.

citra flumen: on the side nearest to Fabius's camp, i.e. the west bank.

superioribus diebus. Stoffel thinks that Fabius reached the site of his camp about May 20, and that Legions VIII, XII, and XIII joined him about June 16. The *superiores dies* would then be the last days of May.

§ 3. **cotidiana**, 'usual'; not necessarily 'daily'. The meaningless alliteration in this sentence is probably a mark of hasty writing; but less conspicuous examples of alliterative sequence are not uncommon in Caesar. He may have found the trick useful in mob oratory, and have unconsciously allowed it to creep into his writings; cf. chap. lxxviii *prohibebantur Afraniani pabulatione, aquabantur aegre*; chap. xiv *circum familias conventus Campani custodiae causa*; and similar passages both in this and in other books.

propiore ponte: i.e. the bridge nearer to Ilerda and to Fabius's camp.

impedimenta: the carts and baggage-animals which were to carry the supplies they obtained.

§ 4. **aggere atque cratibus**: *agger* denotes the timber used in building the bridge; so in chap. xlii it means the timber used in building a *vallum*. The bridges over the Segre were probably of a design similar to that of the famous bridge over the Rhine, described in *B. G.* IV. xvii.

suo ponte. This was a stone bridge across the Sicoris at the foot of the hill of Ilerda. In addition to holding the citadel the Pompeians had no doubt entrenched and garrisoned the head of this bridge. The piers of the present bridge at Lerida show traces of Roman masonry; the head of this bridge is about 480 yards down hill from the nearest point in the walls of the citadel, and at the base of the modern walls there is at this point the brick arch of a small Roman gate (see illustration, p. 70).

coniunctum probably means merely 'close to', as in chap. lxiv: *oppidum*, of course, means Ilerda, and *castra* the Pompeian main camp on the hill (now called Gardeny) to the south-west (cf. chap. xliii).

§ 5. **locum capit superiorem.** A little inland from the left bank of the Segre; near this point then are several low hills, 30 or 40 feet high.

diversamque aciem in duas partes constituit, 'he formed up his men on two fronts facing in opposite directions': cf. chap. lviii *diversi pugnabant*.

§ 7. **signa**: see Introduction G.

CHAPTER XLI

§ 1. **Eo biduo**: cf. chap. xviii *eo triduo*. Caesar arrived about June 22. It is a curious mark of Dante's admiration for Caesar that in the *Purgatorio* he couples together as instances of alacrity

> 'Maria corse con fretta alla montagna';
> E: 'Cesare, per soggiogare Ilerda,
> Punse Marsilia, e poi corse in Ispagna.'

'Mary ran with haste into the hill-country,' and 'Caesar, tc subdue Ilerda, stung Marseilles and then ran into Spain.' (Butler's translation.)

quos . . . reliquerat, 'whom he had retained with him as a bodyguard'; *relinquo* has this sense in *B. G.* VII. xxxiv *equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi reliquit.*

§ 2. **sex cohortes**: each legion no doubt provided one cohort.

triplici instructa acie: see Introduction G. The legions, each with its nine cohorts (cf. last note) in battle formation, were drawn up in line facing the river. They would then turn to the right and march in three parallel columns to their new position, when a left turn would place them with their front to the enemy in readiness for fighting.

ad Ilerdam, 'towards Ilerda.'

sub castris Afrani. This means the main camp on the hill of Gardeny. Caesar's position must have been on the low ground to the north or north-west, far enough away from the enemy to have room to come down to their level and form up facing them.

In *B. C.* II. xxxii Caesar puts into Curio's mouth the words, *An vero in Hispania res gestas Caesaris non audistis? duos pulsos exercitus, duos superatos duces, duas receptas provincias? haec acta diebus XL quibus in conspectum adversariorum venerit Caesar?* Various ancient calendars agree in naming August 2 as the day on which Afranius and Petreius capitulated. If we count forty days back from August 2 (reckoning in the Roman fashion and remembering that June at this time contained only twenty-nine days) we are brought to June 23. It was on June 23, then, that Caesar reached his position before Ilerda. Intermediate dates are calculated from these two fixed points.

in medio colle: the hill rises in terraces and there are several level or gently sloping spaces on which legions could form up in battle order.

§ 3. **per Afranium . . . dimicaretur,** 'that Afranius refused to fight a pitched battle.' Otherwise he would have come down to the plain.

passibus cccc = about 650 yards.

§ 4. **atque**, 'and so.' Cf. chap. xlii *atque operis impediendi.*

vallo: *agger* and *vallum* are both used for a military rampart, though usually *vallum* refers more particularly to the wooden palisade on the top (see Introduction G).

pedum xv fossam, 'a trench 15 feet wide,' i. e. at the top.

a iii. acie: i. e. by men from the rear cohorts of each legion.

§ 5. **intellegeretur**: for the mood see chap. xxii *deducatur*, note.

§ 6. **Sub vesperum**: see chap. xxvii *sub ipsa profectione*, note.

CHAPTER XLII

§ 1. **agger** here must mean the timber for the palisade (*vallum*); cf. chap. xl, note.

similem rationem operis instituit, 'he continued his work on similar lines.'

§ 2. **terrendi causa . . . impediendi**: *causa*, for the sake of, always follows the genitive depending on it, but if there are two genitives it may precede the second.

atque: cf. note on chap. xli. 4.

proelio lacessunt (sc. *nostros*); *proelio* is abl., lit. 'annoy by attacking.' For the phrase cf. chaps. lxxxi, lxxxii; in all three passages in this book, though not elsewhere in Caesar, the object of *lacesso* is omitted. Translate here 'opened an exasperating fire'. The Pompeians had refused to come down to the plain while Caesar's legions were all in battle formation, but they hoped now to prevent the fortification of a camp so close to their own position.

§ 3. **munitione fossae**: see note on *usum celeritatis*, chap. lviii.

§ 5. **Tertio die**: the completion of the camp occupied three days, June 23–5.

CHAPTER XLIII

§ 1. **Erat inter oppidum**, &c. The scene of the fighting described in this and the following chapters is easy to identify and agrees exactly with Caesar's narrative. The illustration on p. 68 gives a view taken from the slopes of the long flat-topped hill of Gardeny (the *proximus collis* on which the Pompeian main body were encamped), and looking north-east to Lérida. In front of the citadel hill will be seen a small knoll (*tumulus paulo editior*), of which the south and south-east sides are steep. This knoll slopes gradually down to the level of the plain on the north and north-west. Stoffel calls it Puig Bordel, and I suppose he is correct, but the inhabitants whom I asked knew of no such special name for it. The lower slopes of Gardeny on the north-west are very gentle, and different people might fix the actual base of the hill at different points, but my measurements are as follows : from the foot of Gardeny to the foot of Puig Bordel, 160 yards : across the corner of Puig Bordel, 50 yards : from the foot of Puig Bordel to the foot of the western spur of the citadel hill, 200 yards. This makes in all 410 yards between the nearest points, and Caesar calls it *planities circiter passuum ccc*, 'a level space about 480 yards across.' The present height of Gardeny is 190 feet, and of the citadel 380 feet, above the level of the river. The summit of Puig Bordel is 60 feet above the river but only about 40 feet above the level ground from which it rises. There is now a small fort on the north corner of Gardeny, connected by a subway with the citadel of Lérida.

§ 2. **occupavisset**, 'should succeed in seizing.'

§ 3. **legiones iii**: from chaps. xlv and xlvi we gather that two of these legions were the Ninth and the Fourteenth, the latter falling in on the left wing, nearest to the hill which formed their objective, and the Ninth in the centre.

unius legionis : the Fourteenth.

antesignanos : these were undoubtedly the picked men of a legion, to whom difficult operations were entrusted. Authorities differ very much as to their numbers and their position in the *acies*. Perhaps, as Stoffel argues, they filled the first two

ranks of each cohort, the *signa* being carried in the second rank. In that case, if a cohort was formed up eight deep (Stoffel's view), the *antesignani* amounted to a quarter of the whole. In a legion of 3,600 men (the average strength in Caesar's time) they would then number about 900. Others think that in battle the *signa* were carried behind the cohorts, and that the *antesignani* consisted of the four cohorts forming the first line of the *triplex acies*. A third conjecture is that they were companies of skirmishers of uncertain number attached to each legion but not embodied in the cohorts; in this case their name was a survival from some earlier method of warfare (cf. the English Grenadiers).

§ 4. **breviore itinere**: the Pompeians had the steep but very short side of the knoll nearest them, while Caesar's men had to face the long gradual ascent.

§ 5. **aliis summissis subsidiis**: to reinforce the Pompeians.

seque ad signa legionum recipere, 'to fall back upon the main force.' If the phrase had been *signa legionis* it might have thrown some light on the position of the *antesignani*, but *signa legionum* means merely the main body of the army.

CHAPTER XLIV

§ 1. **militum illorum.** Pompey's legions had been in Spain since the beginning of his proconsulship in 54. Caesar's men had expected to be met by the regular and orderly tactics of the Roman army, and were not prepared for the tricky strategy which their enemies had learnt from the Spaniards. These latter were adepts at the slim methods of guerilla warfare, and their conquest was a more difficult matter than that of the Gauls, who despised deceptive manœuvres and relied entirely on their courage and strength.

ut magno . . . caperent, 'to start off with a sharp dash forward and boldly seize a position.'

§ 2. **pedem referre . . . non turpe existimarent**, 'they had no scruples about retiring.' The idea of retirement was as repugnant to the ordinary Roman as to our own soldiers.

§ 4. **insuetos huius generis pugnae**: Caesar uses *insuetus* with the genitive as here, or with *ad* and the accusative, as in chap. lxxviii. Other writers use it also with the dative, and occasionally with the infinitive.

ab aperto latere, 'on their unprotected flank.' Caesar probably means their left flank, the flank, that is, on which there were none of their own troops to support them. Usually the *apertum latus* of soldiers means the right, the left being protected by their shields.

§ 5. **legio**, i. e. the Fourteenth.

in proximum collem. There is no one spot close to the rear (north or north-west) of their position which could naturally be called a *collis*, but there is ground rising gently to the north-west from the foot of Puig Bordel, and this is probably all that is meant.

CHAPTER XLV

§ 1. **opinionem**: Kraner and Hofmann define *opinio* as an assumption or expectation based on insufficient evidence. Cf. its use in chaps. xlvii, lxix, lxxxii.

legionem nonam: the legion which formed the centre of his line.

§ 2. **in locum iniquum**: the sides of the citadel hill are steep except towards the south-west. On this the ground rises more gradually between two projecting spurs (A and B on the plan). This slope is now partly enclosed in the fortress, and is crossed for greater security by three walls. The plan represents the outer wall as it is at present, but the summit of the slope is indicated by the dotted line D D. From the upper end of this slope to the centre of a line joining A and B is a descent of about 400 yards; but the slope continues further downward beyond the spurs, so that Caesar's estimate of 400 *passus* is probably not far wrong. The ground between Puig Bordel and the citadel is now built over, and its configuration must be much altered.

§ 4. **utraque ex parte derectus**: at the entrance of the gully the spurs slope off sharply on either hand, that on the right (as

one faces the citadel) being considerably the steeper. The present measurements at this point are as follows: from the left spur to the bottom of the gully, 100 yards; across the gully, 140 yards; from the bottom to the right spur, 60 yards.

ut tres instructae cohortes . . . explerent. An average cohort at this time contained about 360 men. They formed up eight (possibly ten) deep, each man occupying about a yard. This gives a front of about 45 yards. Three cohorts abreast without intervals would therefore just fill the bottom of the gully at its lower end, and would overflow on to the slopes as they advanced (see last note). But there is a difficulty. Although cohorts marched to battle in this close formation, it is believed that when actual fighting began they deployed until each man occupied six feet instead of three (cf. Introduction G, note). The frontage of the three cohorts would then have measured nearly 300 yards, and without closing they could only have entered the gully at all by extending on the slopes on either side up to the foot of the walls. Reference to the plan will afford help to a possible explanation. A little to the north-west of A there are the remains of an ancient outwork (C) running down the hill from the citadel wall. If this or a predecessor existed in Caesar's time he may quite easily have reckoned the distance from B to C and not from B to A, although the fighting which he proceeds to describe must have taken place mainly in the gully between B and A.

§ 7. **illis**: i. e. the Pompeians.

ex castris cohortes per oppidum: the force inside the citadel was apparently but small, and reinforcements were brought from the camp on Gardeny along the river bank, and into the town probably by a gate opposite the bridge-head (see chap. xl, note). They would then be in a position to reinforce their comrades from the rear through another gate at the head of the gully.

§ 8. **Hoc idem Caesar facere cogebatur.** With a narrow front and no room on the flanks this must have been a difficult operation, but the gaps caused by casualties would make it easier.

CHAPTER XLVI

§ 1. **horis quinque**: for the case cf. *viiii annis*, chap. vii, note. There is little doubt that during this long struggle Caesar must have suffered even heavier losses than he admits. The great danger of the position was that, if he withdrew from the gully without covering his retreat in some way, the enemy would pour down on his rear and cut the whole legion to pieces.

consumptis omnibus telis. The Roman legionary's missile weapon was the *pilum* (see Introduction G). Each soldier probably carried two, and no doubt some of the enemy's *pila*, though bent, could still be hurled back.

gladiis destrictis. It was from Spain that the *gladius* (see Introduction G) had been introduced into the Roman army.

§ 2. **ac non nullam partem**, 'and even to some extent.' Cf. *maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt*, *B.G.* IV. i. Roby calls this use the Accusative of the 'part concerned'. In prose the ablative is commoner, but the construction is analogous to the accusative of extent of time and space (cf. *Rev. Lat. Prim.*, § 213).

facilis est nostris receptus datus. For a similar manœuvre of preparing for a retirement downhill by a preliminary attack compare Afranius's tactics in chap. lxxix.

§ 3. **ab utroque latere**. As the retiring cohorts approached the wider space at the mouth of the gully they would leave room for the cavalry to ride round on the slopes on either flank.

deiectis atque inferioribus locis, 'on low ground further down.' *deiectus* in this sense is very rare.

§ 4. **ex primo hastato**: sc. *ordine*, 'centurion of the first century of *hastati*.' Fulginius was the senior centurion of the third (*hastatus*) maniple of the first cohort (see Introduction G). The order of precedence of the sixty centurions in a legion and the methods of promotion are uncertain. The lowest centurion was the *hastatus posterior decimus*, the centurion in command

of the junior century of the third maniple of the tenth cohort; and starting from him the order (I adopt Kraner and Hofmann's view) may possibly have been as follows:

60–51	Hastatus posterior decimus	primus
50–41	Princeps posterior decimus	primus
40–31	Pili posterior decimi	primi
30–22	Hastatus prior decimus	secundus
21–13	Princeps prior decimus	secundus
12–4	Pili prior decimi	secundi
3	Hastatus prior primus	
2	Princeps prior primus	
1	(Pili prior primi) *commonly termed* primi pili centurio *or* primipilus.	

The first three centurions in this case constituted the *primi ordines* (*ordo* here meaning the rank of centurion), and the others the *inferiores ordines*. A capable centurion was no doubt often promoted over the heads of less capable men, and this seems to have been the experience of Fulginius.

amplius DC: see chap. xvii, note.

§ 5. **primi pili centurio**: see above and chap. xiii, note.

CHAPTER XLVII

§ 1. **Sed haec eius diei**, &c., 'however the opinions expressed about the day's events went to show that each side thought,' &c. A very complex sentence: the consecutive clause is abnormal—grammatically it depends on *haec*. It is generally agreed that Caesar understates the seriousness of the reverse which he sustained in this engagement. Actual losses apart, we can see that the moral effect of his failure, and the disastrous floods which immediately followed it, must have made his position extremely critical. For *opinio* see chap. xlv, note.

§ 2. **quae causa**: the relative, which properly refers to *locum tumulumque tenuissent*, is attracted into the gender of *causa*.

§ 3. **quinque horis**: for the case cf. *viiii annis*, chap. vii, note.

CHAPTER XLVIII

§ 1. **biduo, quo haec gesta sunt,** 'two days after these events.'

§ 2. **Tum autem,** 'on this occasion too.' The *nives* rendered the flood particularly abnormal.

§ 3. **ut supra demonstratum est.** Caesar had made no previous mention of the Cinga, so that we must regard this phrase as another indication of hasty writing and lack of revision.

spatio milium xxx, 'which were 30 Roman miles apart,' i. e. $27\frac{2}{3}$ English miles. The Cinga, due west of Ilerda, was only 20 miles distant, but from Ilerda a road seems to have led north-west to a place called Tolous, higher up the Cinga, and this road would have been just about 30 Roman miles long.

§ 4. **maximi commeatus,** 'a great convoy.' The road leading down the valley of the Sicoris seems to have kept mainly to the left bank, and the convoy was on this side of the river when the floods suddenly made the fords impassable and broke Caesar's bridges.

§ 5. **Tempus,** 'the season of the year.'

frumenta: the plural usually means standing corn; here it may denote unthreshed corn.

in acervis: if this conjecture of Kraner and Hofmann is correct, it probably means 'in stacks'. The MSS. have *in hibernis*, but mention of *hiberna* seems out of place.

neque multum a maturitate aberant, 'and the new corn was just not ripe.' It could therefore be used neither for fodder nor for bread.

exinanitae: sc. *erant*.

reliqui: partitive genitive, i. e. genitive of the 'whole' of which *quid* is a part.

§ 7. **levis armaturae**: genitive of description depending upon *Lusitani*. Cf. chap. lxxxiii *Germanos levis armaturae*.

caetrati citerioris Hispaniae. In chap. xxxix *scutatae cohortes* from *Hispania citerior* are enumerated among the Pompeian troops, and also *caetratae cohortes* from *Hispania*

ulterior. Caesar may be confusing them here, or perhaps some of the former had borrowed their fellow countrymen's shields for the occasion.

utribus. For the practice compare Livy xxi. 27 (quoted by Kraner and Hofmann) *Hispani sine ulla mole in utres vestimentis coniectis ipsi caetris superpositis incubantes flumen tranavere*. Goat-skins, of just such a kind as might have been employed for this purpose, are still in use for carrying water in the neighbourhood of Lérida.

ad exercitum non eant, 'they do not go on service.'

CHAPTER XLIX

§ 2. **facultates** = *copiam*. Cf. *B. G.* I. xxxviii *omnium rerum . . . summa erat in eo oppido facultas*; *B. G.* I. xviii *facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse*.

pons Ilerdae: this bridge being built of stone had withstood the floods; cf. chap. xl, note.

CHAPTER L

§ 1. **perfici**: sc. *pontes*.

§ 2. **ipsius fluminis natura**, &c., 'the character of the stream and the great volume of water.' Most of the editors take *natura fluminis* to refer to the steep banks, but as a matter of fact when the river is in flood it is practically level with the top of the banks.

§ 3. **atque erat difficile**, 'in fact it was a difficult matter.'

CHAPTER LI

§ 1. **qui iter habebant**, 'the great convoy which was on its way.' For the indicative in an explanatory clause in oratio obliqua compare chap. xviii *quod . . . abest*, and note.

ex Gallia: probably this means Gallia Narbonensis; the Ruteni lived mainly outside the frontiers of the Province, but the *equites*, Caesar implies, came from within the Province.

ut fert Gallica consuetudo, 'in the regular Gallic way.'

Cf. Cic. *Clu.* xvi. 46 *ut mea fert opinio*, 'according to my opinion.'

§ 2. **cum servis liberisque.** Habits die hard, and the national characteristics which attracted Caesar's notice are exemplified to-day on any French golf-links, where one may see whole families accompanying their paterfamilias round the greens.

usi . . . licentia: *atque* is to some extent explanatory: 'with the freedom to which they were accustomed on previous journeys.'

§ 3. **legati Caesaris**: probably commissaries whom Caesar had sent to organize the convoys.

§ 4. **flumina**: the main stream of the Sicoris prevented their crossing to Caesar's side of the river; its tributaries impeded their progress or retreat on the left bank. Or perhaps *flumina* simply means 'floods'.

continebant, 'held up.'

§ 5. **dum pari certamine**, &c., 'so long as there was a chance of fighting under similar conditions,' i. e. cavalry against cavalry.

§ 6. **Hoc pugnae tempus**, &c., 'the time occupied in this engagement was of great value in securing our comrades' safety.'

CHAPTER LII

§ 2. **ad denarios L in singulos modios**, 'thirty-five shillings a peck,' the usual price being a little under one denarius, or roughly 8*d.* The average price at the present time is about 3*s.* 8*d.* a bushel, or 11*d.* a peck, but the modern cost of living and the modern purchasing value of money differ so much from the ancient that comparison is difficult.

§ 3. **superioresque haberentur**, 'and were regarded as holding the stronger position.'

§ 4. **quod minor erat frumenti copia**, 'as corn was too scarce.'

ipse praesentem, &c., 'and at the same time he personally took steps to alleviate the present distress by every device in his power' (Long). *Tutari* usually means to defend or protect,

and its sense in the present passage can easily be understood, though there is no quite parallel use.

CHAPTER LIII

§ 1. **pleniora etiam atque uberiora . . . perscribebant,** 'proceeded to describe at length with considerable embellishments and exaggerations': *perscribere* means to write a full account of a thing.

§ 3. **ad Afrani domum**: just as *ad Romam* means 'to, or in, the neighbourhood of Rome,' so here the sense is 'at, or outside, Afranius's house.' Crowds gathered in front of the house to make a demonstration and to cheer the general and such of his family as were at home.

principes = *primi*. Cf. chap. lxxvi *princeps in haec verba iurat.*

CHAPTER LIV

§ 1. **militibus equitibusque**: in Caesar *milites* nearly always means infantry; e. g. *B. G.* V. vii *milites equitesque conscendere naves iubet.*

superioribus annis, that is in the years 55 and 54.

usus Britanniae, 'his British experience.' Cf. chap. iv *itinere Asiae*, and see note. Mr. R. Welch, of Belfast, tells me that small coracles or 'curachs', made of tarred canvas stretched on wicker frame-works, are still employed by salmon fishers on the lower reaches of the Boyne, where it is found that they are the only form of boat which will stand bumping about on the shallow river-bed. The illustration in the text (published by kind permission of the Curator of the Pitt-Rivers Museum, Oxford) represents an old-fashioned variety now practically extinct.

§ 3. **carris iunctis,** 'on wagons lashed together'; so that apparently one coracle was carried on two wagons. According to Varro (quoted by Nonius) a *carrus* had only two wheels, so that the expression need not imply that the coracles were more than 8 or 10 feet long.

noctu: to avoid attracting the attention of Afranius's *milites equitesque.*

milia passuum a castris xxii: just over 20 English miles; about this distance up the Segre from Lérida is the modern village of S. Lorenzo de Mongay, and it is here that Stoffel fixes the site of Caesar's bridge. Peskett objects that it would have been impossible to cross the Noguera Ribargozana, a broad tributary of the Segre which joins it about 6½ miles north of Lérida. But there is, about half a mile from the junction, a stone bridge over this tributary (see illustration on p. 81), the piers of which show traces of Roman work similar to that in the bridge at Lérida. There may quite possibly have been an ancient bridge on this site, or perhaps the tributary was a less formidable obstacle than it is to-day.

§ 4. **sentiatur**: for the mood see chap. xxii *deducatur*, note.

§ 5. **rem frumentariam expedire**, 'to get his commissariat into working order.'

CHAPTER LV

§ 1. **magnam partem flumen traiecit**: *traicio* and *traduco* often take a double accusative: cf. chap. lxi, &c.; the verb governs the direct object (*partem*), and the preposition the secondary object (*flumen*); but frequently the preposition (*trans*) is repeated.

pabulatores: foragers sent out from the Pompeian army. Cf. chap. xlix.

cohortibusque caetratis: these reinforcements were sent up, of course, by the Pompeians. For *caetrati* see chap. xxxix, note.

CHAPTER LVI

§ 1. **ad Ilerdam**, 'round Ilerda.' Chapters lvi–viii form a digression describing the first Caesarian success during the siege of Marseilles. It is inserted here because the arrival of the good news at Ilerda coincided with and considerably assisted the improvement in Caesar's position near Ilerda and in the attitude of the Spanish tribes towards him.

L. Domiti: this is of course the L. Domitius Ahenobarbus who, after his inglorious display at Corfinium (chaps. xv–xxiii), had collected a squadron of seven *naves actuariae* and set sail for Massilia (chap. xxxiv), where he had been welcomed by the citizens and appointed to defend the town in Pompey's interests (chap. xxxvi).

tectae, 'decked': such ships were also called *constratae*. The decks afforded protection to the rowers and additional space for the fighting crew. Vessels without decks, or only half-decked, were called *apertae*.

§ 2. **supra**: in chap. xxxiv.

§ 3. **colonis**: these too are mentioned in chap. xxxiv.

D. Brutus: see chap. xxxvi.

insulam, quae est contra Massiliam: there are several small islands just off the harbour; the nearest one, and the most probable site of Brutus's base, is now called Ratonneau.

CHAPTER LVII

§ 1. **multo inferior**: Brutus had apparently only the twelve vessels built at Arles (chap. xxxvi).

antesignanos: see note on chap. xliii: *antesignanos* and *centuriones* are in apposition to *fortissimos viros*.

§ 2. **ex portu**: the roadstead of Ratonneau is on the south, and the battle was fought probably in the two or three miles of open water between the island and Marseilles.

§ 4. **pastoresque illi Domiti**, 'and those herdsmen of Domitius.'

suam probare operam, 'to give proofs of their zeal.' '*Opus* is used mostly of the mechanical activity of work, as that of animals, slaves, and soldiers; *opera* supposes a free will and desire to serve' (Lewis and Short).

CHAPTER LVIII

§ 1. **quoad**, 'so long as.'

remos transcurrentes detergere, 'to break off our oars as they raced past'; *detergere* means literally 'to wipe off, make a clean sweep of'.

§ 2. **cum propius erat necessario ventum**, 'but when-

ever they came to closer quarters as they could not help doing.' In Cicero and Caesar, when the principal predicate is imperfect indicative, *cum* with a pluperfect indicative almost always=*quotiens*: cf. *B. G.* V. xix; V. xxxv, &c. 'In all passages in Caesar where *necessario* occurs with a comparative the two words have to be taken separately' (Peskett). Cf. chaps. lxiv *necessario longius*; lxv *necessario maturius*.

ab scientia . . . confugiebant: they shifted the ground of their confidence and 'relied no longer on the skilful manœuvring of their helmsmen but on the bravery of their mountaineers'.

§ 3. **cum minus**, &c.: answered by *tum etiam tarditate*.

factae enim subito: see chap. xxxvi.

usum celeritatis, 'advantage of speed': *celeritatis* is a defining genitive, denoting the kind of advantage. Kraner and Hofmann regard it as parallel to *munitione fossae*, chap. xlii; *auxiliis legionum*, chap. lx; *aditum commendationis*, chap. lxxiv.

§ 4. **binis navibus**: this clearly must mean 'between two of the enemy's ships'.

diversi pugnabant: cf. chap. xl *diversam aciem*.

CHAPTER LIX

§ 2. **Illi** = the Pompeians.

§ 3. **longiore circuitu**, 'by making a long détour.'

custodias stationesque: when it is a question of cavalry, *custodiae* correspond to the modern vedettes or Cossack posts of about half a dozen men at the most, while *stationes* correspond to mounted piquets and outpost squadrons; cf. chap. xxi, note.

aut . . . aut: these two are not a pair; the first *aut* contrasts *vitabant* with *fugiebant*, the second *accepto detrimento* with *equitatu viso*.

ex medio itinere: these words go with *fugiebant*; 'they would break off their expedition, drop their loads, and fly.'

CHAPTER LX

§ 1. **contributi**: the word probably implies that the Cala-

gurritani were the tributaries rather than the allies of the Oscenses. Osca is only sixteen miles from Calagurris.

§ 3. **deportant**: sc. *frumentum*.

§ 4. **cohors Illurgavonensis**: one of the *cohortes citerioris provinciae* which formed part of the Pompeian forces (chap. xxxix).

signa ex statione transfert: *transire* and *signa transferre* are practically identical in meaning, and were used together in chap. xxiv. The addition here of *ex statione* emphasizes the fact that the deserting cohort formed part of the army facing Caesar.

§ 5. **quinque**: the Oscenses and Calagurritani are regarded as one.

auxiliis legionum, 'reinforcements of regulars:' *legionum* is an explanatory or defining genitive: cf. chap. lviii *usum celeritatis*, and note.

dicebantur: see chap. xxxix.

CHAPTER LXI

§ 1. **per pontem**: this means, of course, Caesar's latest bridge (chap. liv).

idoneum locum. From chap. lxiv we learn that the distance from Caesar's camp up to the ford and back down the left bank to a position opposite the camp was about five-and-a-half English miles. If this was the case, the ford must have been about two miles above Ilerda, and a little higher up the Segre than the site adopted by Stoffel. His view is that the ford was about a mile above Ilerda, where the river broadens to a width of over 600 yards, but is divided into several channels separated by low islands. The trenches, he conjectures, were cut through one of these islands, and by this means water was diverted from the only deep channel and a crossing rendered practicable. I incline to the view that Caesar's estimate of the distance is correct, and that the site is to be found a little higher up, not far from the probable position of Fabius's ill-fated *propior pons* (chap. xl). Here the ground on the west bank is very flat and marshy, and trenches cut through the bank might conceivably have had the effect of drawing off a considerable proportion of the stream

and spreading it over the low-lying meadows, whence, when they were flooded, it would find its way back to the river lower down.

§ 3. **ex duobus contrariis generibus, quae . . . civitates, . . . quae . . .** , 'of the two opposing classes of states, those which . . . , while those which . . . .'

superiore bello: Sertorius maintained his independence in Spain from 80 to 72, but Pompey did not take part in the war against him until 76 (see Index, *Sertorius* and *Pompeius*).

magnis adfectae beneficiis: cf. chap. xxix.

obscurius, 'comparatively unknown.'

exspectabant, 'they intended to wait for.'

suis locis, 'on favourable ground.'

§ 4. **Octogesa**: the town is only mentioned in this narrative, and its position is uncertain. It is usually placed at the junction of the Sicoris with the Hiberus, on the right bank of the former and the left of the latter, on the site of the modern Mequinenza. This is exactly the right distance from Ilerda, but if it was in such an easily defined position one would have expected Caesar to mention the fact; perhaps it may have been lower down the Hiberus, where the river makes a slight bend to the north.

pontem imperant fieri: in good prose the acc. with inf. construction after *impero* is only permissible when the inf. is passive or deponent: cf. *has omnes actuarias imperat fieri*, *B.G.* V. i.

traducunt: for the double acc. cf. *traiecit*, chap. lv, note.

castraque muniunt: at the east end of the bridge opposite to Ilerda.

vallo pedum xii, 'a rampart twelve feet high.'

CHAPTER LXII

§ 1. **huc iam deduxerat rem**, 'had now advanced matters to this position.' The phrase is employed in a slightly different sense in chap. lxxxvi.

etsi difficulter atque aegre fiebat, 'though it was a difficult operation, involving strenuous effort.'

§ 2. **possent tamen atque auderent flumen transire**, 'had a possible crossing before them, and were ready to take the risk': cf. chap. lxiv *posse et audere*.

rapiditate fluminis: the normal pace of the current is said to be two feet a second.

ad transeundum impedirentur: this construction after *impedire* is not mentioned by Lewis and Short, but two other examples occur in Caesar (*B. G.* VII. xxvi; *B. C.* III. lxxvi). The passage in chap. xxv is of course not parallel, as *ad defendendum* depends upon *aditus atque incursus*.

§ 3. **Sed tamen . . . reperiebatur**, 'yet notwithstanding (in spite, that is, of the depth and swiftness of the river) at the time when the news arrived that the bridge over the Ebro was almost completed, they were well on their way to the discovery of a ford over the Segre.'

CHAPTER LXIII

§ 1. **eo magis**: because the ford was almost practicable.

Ilerdae: to hold both the citadel and the bridge.

§ 2. **Relinquebatur**: see chap. xxix, note.

male haberet, 'harass,' 'worry'; cf. chap. lxxxi.

§ 3. **de tertia vigilia**: the third watch at this time lasted from midnight to about 2.15: *de* probably = 'at the beginning of'; cf. the Note on the Calendar.

circumfusa, 'hanging on their flanks.'

CHAPTER LXIV

§ 1. **ex superioribus locis**: presumably the long hill of Gardeny, which had just been abandoned by the Pompeians.

ac non numquam sustinere . . . interrumpi, 'that sometimes the enemy's rearguard offered resistance and their march was consequently broken off.' *sustinere* is used intransitively again a few lines lower down (in the sense of 'hold out').

§ 2. **alias inferri signa**, 'while every now and then the Pompeians would take the offensive' (Long). *Inferre* [illegible] is

regularly used by Caesar of a general advance to the attack. Cf. chap. lxxxii; *B. G.* I. xxv; II. xxvi, &c.

conversos: i. e. *nostros*, which is subject of *insequi*, not object.

§ 3. **circulari et dolere**: historic infinitives.

bellum necessario longius duci, 'and that the war was inevitably being prolonged.' For *necessario* cf. chap. lviii, note.

adire atque obsecrare: historic infinitives (subject, *milites*) governing *centurionesque tribunosque militum*.

ut per eos . . . parceret, 'to tell Caesar that he was not to think of sparing them either trouble or danger' (Long). An indirect request precedes the indirect statement.

posse et audere: cf. chap. lxii.

ea: sc. *via*.

§ 4. **studio et vocibus**: a hendiadys, 'their enthusiastic cries': or, if it is taken merely to refer to the message brought by the officers, 'their earnest language.'

§ 6. **reliquas legiones**: five in all, and also the auxiliary infantry. See chap. xxxix *legiones . . . sex*, and note.

supra: to stem the force of the current.

§ 7. **ab equitatu**: i. e. by the men mounted on the *iumenta*. The *equitatus* proper had all crossed previously.

triplicemque aciem: cf. chap. xli, note, and see Introduction G.

§ 8. **milium sex**: cf. chap. lxi, note.

de tertia vigilia: cf. chap. lxiii, note.

ante horam diei viiii: before 2.30 p.m. See Note on the Calendar.

CHAPTER LXV

§ 1. **nova**, 'unexpected,' 'astonishing.'

locis superioribus. It is impossible to be sure exactly how far the Pompeians had retreated when Caesar's infantry overtook them. Stoffel calculates that they were about fourteen miles south of Ilerda, a similar distance north-east of Octogesa, and about four miles east of the Sicoris.

§ 3. **necessario maturius**: cf. chap. lviii, note.

enim refers to *maturius quam constituerant*.

itinera difficilia, &c. The country traversed so far consisted for the most part of gently rolling downs, and afforded no satisfactory position in which the Pompeians could encamp without the risk of their further retreat being cut off. Five miles south of them however rose the range of hills which defends the north bank of the Ebro in this district. This range is intersected by several valleys; one of these strikes the Ebro near to its junction with the Segre, and another, a narrower one, leads due south and reaches the river further down opposite the modern village of Rivarroja. It was probably this latter for which the Pompeians were making, and I am inclined to think that Octogesa lay at the end of it, and not higher up the river. Cf. chap. lxi, note.

excipiebant, 'succeeded.' Cf. *excipere*, chap. lxvi.

CHAPTER LXVI

§ 2. **signum dari . . . conclamari**, 'he orders the bugle to sound and the regulation command for striking camp to be given.' There was doubtless a regular bugle-call to warn the men to stand by, and then the executive command ('*vasa colligite*', or simply '*vasa*') was given verbally by the centurions: compare chap. lxix, where '*ad arma*' are probably the actual words of the command. Caesar's *vasa* had probably been left behind during the forced march, but had overtaken him in the course of the evening. By sounding the call he showed the enemy that their attempt to give him the slip had been seen, and nothing more was required to make them abandon it.

exaudito clamore: *exaudire* is regularly used in the sense of hearing from a distance.

in angustiis: *angustiae* does not mean here a defile through the larger hills, as it does at the end of the chapter, but only any difficult ground they might have to cross near the camp.

§ 4. **campestris**: level, that is, compared to the higher

hills further on; the ground is practically all of the switchback variety, and could hardly be described in itself as *campester*.

qui prior has angustias . . . negoti, 'those who were the first to reach the pass through these hills would have little difficulty in preventing their opponents from following.' The phrase *hae angustiae* probably means the narrow defile referred to in the note on chap. lxv.

CHAPTER LXVII

§ 1. **Disputatur in consilio,** &c., 'Petreius and Afranius called a council of war, and discussed the question of the best time for moving': *disputare* in classical Latin never means 'to dispute'.

censebant, 'gave it as their opinion': *censere* used in this sense is naturally followed by a final clause.

posse . . . veniri . . . sentiretur . . . conclamatum esset . . . posse . . . exiri are all used impersonally.

§ 2. **conclamatum esset**: subjunctive because it is a subordinate verb in the indirect statement introduced by *argumenti sumebant loco.*

argumenti sumebant loco: the object of *sumebant* is the preceding *quod*-clause; *argumenti loco* = *pro argumento.*

§ 3. **religioni**: sc. *sacramenti,* 'the obligation of his military oath.' Cf. chap. lxxvi *religio iuris iurandi.*

consulere, 'to regard,' 'have regard for.'

§ 4. **At lucem . . . adferre,** 'but daylight of itself—when all can see—helps much to make men ashamed (of cowardice), and so too does the (visible) presence of their officers and centurions.' This is fair sense, but the text is almost certainly corrupt. Nearly all the editors take *omnium oculis* to mean 'because all are watching' (*oculis,* ablative of cause): it seems to me less difficult to regard *oculis* as a dative of the recipient after *adferre,* the sense being simply that men are less liable to panic when they can see what is happening, and when their officers are in full view.

quibus rebus = *cum eis rebus.*

§ 5. **etsi aliquo accepto detrimento**: *etsi* with a participle

occurs in Caesar only here and in *B. C.* III. xcv *etsi magno aestu fatigati.*

§ 6. **prima luce**: the sun rose about 4.30.

CHAPTER LXVIII

§ 1. **regionibus** probably means the immediate neighbourhood of his camp (see note on *magnoque circuitu* below). Decidius Saxa had already reported on the country that lay to the front (chap. lxvi).

albente caelo, 'at the first flush of dawn': a poetical expression, used by Caesar in this passage only. It denotes an earlier hour than *prima luce* at the end of the last chapter, for the Pompeians had not yet started.

magnoque circuitu: from a study of this chapter and the next we gather that close to the north and east of Caesar's camp there were undulations in the ground high enough to conceal his movements from the enemy. He first marched a short way to the north, as though returning to Ilerda; then as soon as he was under cover, he turned eastward and doubled back to the south over very difficult country. Afranius's men did not realize what was happening until they suddenly sighted the enemy emerging from behind the hills to the east, making full speed for the south, and gradually turning westward (*ad dexteram*, chap. lxix) in order to head off the Pompeians from their objective—the defile leading to the Ebro.

nullo certo itinere, 'not following any regular track.'

§ 2. **per manus**, 'from hand to hand.'

CHAPTER LXIX

§ 1. **prosequebantur**: this word, which usually means to escort as a mark of honour or friendship, is used here ironically: 'cheered our troops on their way with ribald cries.' The accusative and infinitive clause which follows indicates in polite language the general character of these cries. We cannot help wishing that Caesar had given us a specimen or two of unexpurgated soldiers' slang, but he never allowed himself such a lapse from dignity.

ad Ilerdam, 'towards Ilerda.'

Erat enim . . . diversum, 'for the route led clean away from our objective' (Long).

§ 2. **consilium . . . efferebant**, 'began to congratulate themselves on the plan of action they had adopted.'

opinionem : cf. chap. xlv, note.

ad iter: for this particular expedition from the camp: their *impedimenta* had clearly followed them from their head quarters near Ilerda. The Pompeians thought that the need of provisions must be very urgent to make their enemies retire without their *impedimenta*. No doubt, though Caesar does not mention it, a small garrison was left to protect the camp.

§ 3. **Sed, ubi paulatim**, &c. The narrative passes on to the moment when the Caesarians reappeared. Caesar's camp was close by that of Afranius (*in proximo colle*, chap. lxv), and only a few minutes need have elapsed.

retorqueri agmen ad dexteram : see note on chap. lxviii.

primos superare regionem castrorum, 'the vanguard was passing in front of the position occupied by their own camp.' By *superare* Caesar means that whereas hitherto his troops had always been behind (that is, north of) the Pompeians, they were now actually passing by the Pompeian camp, and thereby getting nearer to the defile than their rivals.

fugiens laboris : this is an isolated instance in Caesar of a present participle used as an adjective and followed by a genitive case; nor is *fugiens* used with the genitive elsewhere in classical Latin. However *appetens*, as an adjective, and other adjectives expressing desire and its opposite are regularly used with the genitive by other classical writers; cf. *appetens gloriae atque avidus laudis*, Cicero, *Imp. Pomp.* 3.

§ 4. **Conclamatur ad arma**: see note on chap. lxvi.

CHAPTER LXX

§ 2. **Res tamen . . . deducta** : literally, 'matters had been inevitably advanced by the Afranians to this position.' Caesar's meaning is that the Afranians in separating themselves from their

impedimenta had made a disastrous move: they might possibly win the race to the defile, but if they succeeded in this they would be sure to lose their baggage-train. Perhaps one might translate freely, 'but the Afranians had themselves to thank for the dilemma which now necessarily confronted them.'

vitarent, impedimenta: note omission of conjunction (asyndeton).

quibus interclusis: remoter object of *ferri*.

exercitu: ablative of means; such words as *exercitu*, *equitatu* (chap. lxxi) and even *militibus* are frequently regarded as denoting instruments rather than personal agents: a soldier especially would naturally so regard them.

§ 3. **ex magnis rupibus**, 'after leaving the lofty rocks.' Cf. *ex praetura*, 'after his praetorship,' chap. xxii.

planitiem: this stretch of level ground must have lain directly between Afranius and the defile.

§ 4. **caetratorum.** See chap. xxxix, note.

montem . . . excelsissimus. The highest hill in the neighbourhood is a spur of the Sierra de Campells (about 1,600 feet high) which lay to the south-west of the probable position of the Pompeians, and in a line between them and the junction of the Segre with the Ebro.

§ 5. **Hunc cum obliquo . . . peterent**, 'while the light infantry were moving to the flank with this hill as their objective.'

omnesque, 'but all'; see note on *paludatique*, chap. vi.

CHAPTER LXXI

§ 1. **Erat occasio . . . rei**, 'now was the time for a successful engagement.'

sustinere: for the intransitive use cf. chap. lxiv.

equitatu. Cf. note on *exercitu*, chap. lxx.

loco aequo atque aperto: at the moment the Pompeians were on higher ground and held a slight advantage of position, but they were entirely without water or provisions, and would clearly have to come down soon and try to regain their camp.

§ 2. **legati, centuriones tribunique militum** : these three classes of officers regularly attended councils of war.

§ 3. **signa misisse,** 'had given indications': the exact phrase seems to occur elsewhere only in poetry (Plautus, *Capt.* 1035; Lucretius i. 174; Vergil, *Georg.* i. 229), but *mittere* in the sense of 'give forth, utter' is not unusual. Cf. chap. ii *oratio . . . ex ipsius ore Pompei mitti videbatur.* With the whole phrase compare, but do not copy, the cheap newspaper metaphor in which a tired horse is said to 'hang out signals of distress'.

§ 4. **iniquitatem loci**: the officers realized that Caesar might hesitate to storm the hill, but they knew, as well as Caesar did, that the hill was untenable without supplies.

CHAPTER LXXII

§ 1. **in eam spem venerat,** 'had formed the hope.'

§ 2. **amitteret . . . pateretur . . . periclitaretur**: indirect deliberative subjunctives: 'why was he to lose,' &c.

§ 3. **civium** : objective genitive ; 'for his fellow countrymen.' *Civis* frequently has the sense of fellow citizen. Cf. chap. lxxiv, *municipem,* 'fellow townsman.'

rem obtinere, 'to gain his object.' Cf. *B. G.* VII. lxxxv *si rem obtinuerint,* 'if they gain the day.'

§ 4. **plerisque non probabatur,** 'did not prove acceptable to the majority (of the officers).' Kraner and Hofmann draw a distinction between the uses of the dative (as here) and *a* with the ablative (as in chap. lxxiv) after *probari. Mihi probatur aliquid,* they say, = 'I agree (with something) in my heart'; while *a me probatur aliquid* = 'I outwardly express my agreement'.

vero, 'actually.'

§ 5. **quam proxime potest**: Caesar had previously encamped *in proximo colle* (chap. lxv), but he now took up a still closer position, probably on the south.

CHAPTER LXXIII

§ 1. **fluminis Hiberi spem,** 'hope of reaching the river Ebro.'

de reliquis rebus, 'as to their future movements.' Cf. *reliquum consilium*, chap. lxxviii.

§ 2. **si . . . vellent . . . peterent**: hypothetical, 'supposing they chose.' Cf. chap. lxxxiv *si colloqui vellent*.

Tarraconem. Tarraco was about fifty miles to the east, but the route lay through very hilly country and would have required four or five days' march.

§ 3. **cohortium alariarum**, 'cohorts of Spanish auxiliaries.' This title for auxiliary forces dated from the time when such troops were regularly posted on the wings of a Roman army, and it was still retained although this disposition had ceased to be regarded as essential; e. g. in chap. lxxxiii the auxiliaries form Afranius's reserve.

ad aquam. Water was doubtless closer to their present camp than to their former position in chap. lxxi; but still, to judge from the *crebrae stationes* and from the events which took place during the commander's absence, it must have been at least a mile away and perhaps further. Water is scarce in the neighbourhood, but the recent rains would have filled such streams and wells as there were. If the Segre itself had been the source of their supply Caesar would have mentioned it.

longius, 'a considerable distance.'

CHAPTER LXXIV

§ 1. **notum aut municipem**, 'acquaintance or fellow townsman'; *notum* here and *notos* a few lines down are practically nouns; for *municipem* see note on *civium*, chap. lxxii.

§ 2. **pepercissent**: considerable variety is allowed in the sequence of tenses after an historic present; e. g. in this chapter we have *pepercissent . . . sint commissuri . . . fecerint . . . contulerint . . . videantur . . . viderentur*.

de imperatoris fide, 'how far they could depend upon Caesar.'

armaque . . . contulerint, 'but had taken up arms against him'; for *-que* in the sense of 'but' after a negative see note on *fundatique*, chap. vi. *Conferre* with *arma*, *manus*, *signa*, *castra*,

and the like frequently means 'to bring together for hostile purposes'.

§ 3. **fidem ab imperatore**, &c., 'to avoid the appearance of having committed any criminal action in betraying their commanding officers, they petition for a pledge from Caesar that he would spare the lives of Petreius and Afranius. The moment this guarantee should be given they promise to desert.' *In* with the accusative of a reflexive pronoun is commonly used after *concipere* and *admittere scelus* or *facinus*, the notion being that of absorbing or admitting the crime into oneself: cf. *B. G.* III. ix *quantum in se facinus admisissent.* So far the Pompeian soldiers had not approached Caesar personally, but were merely laying their case before their Caesarian friends: the clause *quibus confirmatis rebus* is therefore conditional. That *confirmare* is used both transitively and intransitively in the same sentence would seem to be a mark of hasty writing. For *signa translaturos* cf. chaps. xxiv, lx.

primorum ordinum centuriones: see note on chap. xlvi; here *ordinum* means 'centuries'.

§ 4. **suos in castra invitandi causa adducunt**, 'bring their friends into their camp to show them hospitality.'

seque ei commendant: this may mean simply 'surrender to him', but it is better to take it in the same sense as the noun *commendatio* which follows, and to translate, 'introduce themselves to his favourable notice.' Cf. *B. G.* IV. xxvii *se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.*

§ 5. **evocaverant**: not used here in the technical military sense.

per quem quisque eorum = *ut quisque eorum per suum notum.*

aditum commendationis, 'a chance of a favourable introduction'; for *aditus* in the sense of 'opening', 'facilities', cf. chap. xxxi *nactus aditus ad ea conanda.* For *commendationis*, explanatory genitive, cf. note on *usum celeritatis*, chap. lviii.

§ 7. **plena laetitia**: *plenus* in Caesar elsewhere takes the genitive; Cicero and other writers use it with both cases.

CHAPTER LXXV

§ 1. **ut videbatur,** 'apparently'; lit. 'as he seemed': *videri* used impersonally usually means 'to seem good'.

§ 2. **non deserit sese,** 'did not allow himself to lose heart.'

familiam, 'his private servants.'

praetoria cohorte caetratorum, 'the general's body-guard consisting of light-armed Spanish troops.' For *caetrati* see chap. xxxix, note.

beneficiariis suis. These were men who had received some privilege for meritorious service.

§ 3. **sinistras sagis involvunt,** 'wrapped their cloaks round their left hands,' to take the place of the shields which they had left in their own camp.

CHAPTER LXXVI

§ 1. **flens,** 'with tears in his eyes.' It must be remembered that southern nations are more emotional than northern, and that the ancient world was more so than is the modern. Not only a desperate situation, as in this case, or actual terror, as in *B. G.* I. xxxix, but such feelings as disappointment and astonishment used frequently to cause tears.

adversariis ad supplicium, 'to the tender mercies of his foes' (Long).

§ 3. **Princeps,** 'the first'; cf. chap. liii *ut principes talem nuntium attulisse . . . viderentur.*

idem ius iurandum adigit Afranium, 'he administers the same oath to Afranius'; lit. 'he leads up Afranius to the same oath.' The secondary object (*ius iurandum*) after *adigo* is similar to that after *traicio* and *traduco*; see note on chap. lv *magnam partem flumen traicit.* The special oath taken on this occasion must be distinguished from the usual oath of allegiance (*sacramentum*).

§ 5. **Sic terror . . . redegit,** 'and so the terror aroused by the generals, the barbarous vengeance they exacted and the obligation of an unusual oath destroyed all hope of an immediate capitulation and led to a resumption of hostilities.'

CHAPTER LXXVII

§ 2. **postea** : the deserters were not immediately given commissions, but Caesar remembered them later on.

in priores ordines, 'to their former positions': not to be confused with *primi ordines*, in chap. lxxiv (for which see note on chap. xlvi).

equites Romanos: not, of course, cavalry, but members of the Equestrian Order; see note on chap. xvii. Nearly all *tribuni militum* were drawn from this Order; the meaning therefore is simply that he gave the Pompeian tribunes a corresponding rank to that which they had lost through their desertion.

CHAPTER LXXVIII

§ 1. **Prohibebantur.** I follow Peskett in supposing that a night intervenes at this point. For the alliteration cf. note on *cotidiana*, chap. xl.

copiam . . . non nullam, 'a fair supply.'

dierum xii: the MSS. read 'xxii', but this is clearly incorrect, for if the legionaries had been so well provided they could have supplied the wants of the auxiliaries. The reading adopted is Peskett's suggestion: it involves only a slight alteration of the text, and it represents an amount nearly equal to the normal fortnight's supply which a Roman legionary was expected to carry with him. In a note on chap. xxxix we estimated the original Pompeian strength at about 35,000, of whom rather less than 20,000 were legionaries. They had lost heavily in engagements outside Ilerda (chap. xlvi), and east of the Segre (chap. lv); one cohort of auxiliaries had gone over bodily to Caesar (chap. lx), two had been left behind to hold Ilerda and the bridge (chap. lxiii), and four had a few days previously been cut to pieces by the enemy's cavalry (chap. lxx); and there had been other casualties and desertions. The army had left Ilerda on July 24: it was now July 28, and they finally capitulated on August 2. Twelve days' supplies for the legionaries, supplemented by the *sarcinaria iumenta* (chap.

lxxxi) might just have lasted the entire force for these nine days.

ab Ilerda: from their camp on the hill south of Ilerda.

§ 2. **corpora insueta ad onera portanda**: elsewhere in Caesar *insuetus* is followed by a genitive. Cf. chap. xliv *insueti huius generis pugnae*. Romans were justly proud of the carrying powers of their own troops. In addition to his clothing, armour and weapons (which could not have come to less than 30 or 40 pounds), a Roman legionary had to carry a pack (*sarcina*) weighing at least 45 pounds. This contained, among other things (see Introduction G), a fortnight's supply of corn (about 28 pounds). The most that a British soldier has to carry, including his clothing and all possible ammunition, is just over 59 pounds.

cotidie probably means from the day they left Ilerda to the day of the final surrender.

§ 3. **explicitius**, 'the simpler'; lit. 'the more disentangled, less fraught with difficulties.'

ibi se reliquum . . . confidebant, 'once there, they felt confident that they would be able to work out (lit. disentangle) a future plan of campaign': *explicaturos* following so close on *explicitius* would seem to point to hurried writing. With *reliquum consilium* cf. *reliquis rebus*, chap. lxxiii.

§ 4. **Tarraco**: see note on chap. lxxiii.

quo spatio . . . intellegebant, 'and they were well aware that there were many disasters which they might meet with on the way'; lit. 'that their cause might incur many disasters'.

§ 5. **Nullum intercedebat . . . proeliarentur**, 'no appreciable time passed before their rearguard was engaged with our cavalry'; lit. 'no time began to pass'.

CHAPTER LXXIX

§ 1. **pluresque**, 'and several of these cohorts.'

§ 3. **vero**, 'and in addition,' is the complement of *neque* in the previous line.

§ 4. **Relinquebatur**, 'the only course left was.' For the

construction cf. chap. xxix, note; and for the manœuvre cf. Caesar's own tactics in chap. xlvi.

§ 5. **ultro**, 'actually.'

quorum nulli . . . exciperetur, 'and no trooper could leave the line without being cut off by Caesar's cavalry.'

CHAPTER LXXX

§ 1. **Tali dum pugnatur modo**, 'now in engagements of this character.' The sentence down to *subsistunt* is a statement of general military experience.

subsistunt: sc. *copiae*; 'troops halt.'

§ 2. **montem excelsum**, 'a position on high ground.' *mons* in Caesar does not necessarily imply any great height; any position distinctly above the general level can be so described.

ibique una fronte . . . muniunt, 'and there on the side alone which faced the enemy they threw up earthworks to protect their camp.' Caesar's camp near Ilerda was begun in much the same way (chap. xli).

§ 3. **tabernacula**: the Roman military tents were made of skins stretched on poles and ropes; in shape they probably resembled the *tente d'abri* type of bivouac shelter; their size is doubtful, but one was allotted to every ten men, and those who shared a tent were called *contubernales*.

hora circiter sexta: at about 10.45; see Note on the Calendar.

§ 4. **hora x**: at 3.45.

cotidianum itineris officium, 'their usual work when the troops were moving'; i.e. 'their work of harassing the rear-guard'. For *cotidianum* cf. chap. xl.

CHAPTER LXXXI

§ 2. **supra**: i.e. in chap. lxxii.

proelio non lacessit: cf. chap. xlii, note.

§ 3. **vitio**, 'disadvantageous position.'

tota nocte: for the case cf. *VIIII annis*, chap. vii, note.

castraque castris convertunt, 'and changed their first camp for a second.'

postero die: July 30.

et praesenti . . . dabantur, 'and escape from one imminent peril only led them into others.'

§ 4. **proximo die**: July 31.

§ 5. **His eos suppliciis male haberi**, 'that they should be harassed by sufferings of this kind.' For *male haberi* cf. chap. lxiii.

quo necessario descensuros existimabat, 'to which he thought they would be compelled to have recourse.'

§ 6. **ad id**, if correct, refers to *eruptiones*, but the reading is doubtful.

sarcinaria iumenta: these were the animals on which the men's packs (*sarcinae*) were loaded, when their owners had to be ready to fight while on the march. The rest of the *iumenta* were not slaughtered. Cf. chap. lxxxiv.

CHAPTER LXXXII

§ 1. **tertio die**: August 1.

hora circiter viiii: at about 2.30; see Note on the Calendar.

§ 2. **contra opinionem enim . .. adferebat**: the subject is *videri proelium defugisse*: 'for to seem to have declined an engagement, in the face of his troops' expectation and his own reputation with the world, would be likely to do him considerable harm.' For *opinionem* cf. chap. xlv, note.

§ 3. **quae sunt cognitae**: Caesar stated his reasons in chap. lxxii.

atque hoc etiam magis, 'and the more too on this account'; *hoc* is abl. of cause.

etiam in fugam coniectis adversariis: a conditional clause; cf. *quibus confirmatis rebus*, chap. lxxiv.

ad summam, 'towards a definite conclusion.'

§ 4. **amplius**: see chap. xvii, note.

Hinc, 'of this space.'

§ 5. **signa inferentibus**: conditional, 'if they advanced to the attack.'

proelio non lacessere: see chap. xlii, note.

CHAPTER LXXXIII

§ 1. **Acies erat**, &c. Afranius had in all about fifty legionary cohorts (five legions) and about twenty-four auxiliary cohorts—if we assume the original number of the latter to have been thirty (see chap. xxxix, note) and deduct losses of all kinds (see chap. lxxviii, note). His three lines then may have contained about twenty-five cohorts apiece. No mention is made of his cavalry; after their recent miserable exhibition (chap. lxxix) they were probably left in the camp.

alariae cohortes: see chap. lxxiii, note.

§ 2. **sed** contrasts Caesar's disposition with that of the enemy. Both had three lines, but Caesar's were of a different character His were in the recognized Roman formation (*triplex acies*), for our knowledge of which this chapter is one of the chief sources. It is described in Introduction G.

ex v legionibus: one, we cannot tell which, had been left with the *infirmiores milites* in the camp near Ilerda (chap. lxiv).

suae cuiusque legionis = *quaeque suae legionis*, 'each set of cohorts following those belonging to their own legion.' When *quisque* follows *suus* it is occasionally attracted into the case of *suus*. Compare Cicero, *Tusc. Disp.* iv. 12 *haec igitur proclivitas ad suum quodque genus* (=*cuiusque ad suum genus*) *aegrotatio dicitur*.

sagittarii funditoresque: no mention is made of the main body of Caesar's auxiliaries, nor have they been referred to since the start from Ilerda. In fact, one might easily be led to suppose from the narrative in chap. lxiv that only legionaries crossed the Segre. But the *Germani levis armaturae* are mentioned a few lines lower down, and without a large contingent of auxiliaries Caesar's troops would have been considerably outnumbered—granting that our conjectures as to the respective strength of the armies are approximately correct (see chap. xxxix, notes). However none but the archers and slingers seem to have formed up in the *acies* on this occasion.

media . . . acie: probably with two legions on one side of them and three on the other.

§ 3. **tenere . . . propositum,** 'to be achieving its object.'

Producitur tamen res, 'yet the situation was merely being protracted,' i. e. no permanent advantage was gained by the demonstration.

aciesque . . . discedunt, 'and the troops, after being kept in position till sunset, withdrew to their respective camps.'

§ 4. **Postero die:** August 2.

vadum fluminis Sicoris: the river was probably only two or three miles distant. The floods had doubtless subsided considerably during the eight days since Caesar's crossing, and perhaps his trenching operations were still producing some effect.

§ 5. **Germanos:** Caesar more than once expressed his admiration of German troops, and had long kept in his service a small troop of German cavalry (*B. G.* VII. xiii). In the year 52, during his campaign against Vercingetorix, he had imported from Germany a mixed force of cavalry and *milites levis armaturae* (*B. G.* VII. lxv), and these latter had doubtless come to Spain with the Gallic auxiliaries.

CHAPTER LXXXIV

§ 1. **omnibus rebus obsessi,** 'cut off at every point'; for *omnibus rebus* cf. chap. xxvi.

iumentis: cf. note on chap. lxxxi *sarcinaria iumenta*.

§ 2. **et, palam si colloqui vellent, concessum est.** 'but he gave his consent in case they should agree to a public conference'; i. e. a conference *audiente utroque exercitu*. For *si vellent*, hypothetical, cf. chap. lxxiii.

§ 3. **ipsis:** i.e. himself and Petreius.

officio: dat. after *satis facere*, 'they had fulfilled the claims of duty.'

CHAPTER LXXXV

§ 1. **nulli omnium . . . convenisse,** 'that no one in the army had had less justification (than Afranius and Petreius) for complaining or for making pathetic appeals'; lit. 'that this rôle of

complaint or of pathetic speech had suited no one of them all less.' For *miseratio* in this sense cf. Cic. *Brut.* xxi. 82 *miserationibus uti.*

§ 2. **ut quam integerrima . . . omnia**, 'that there might be no possible obstacle in the way of a peaceful settlement'. Literally, 'that everything might be as flawless as possible with a view to peace.'

§ 3. **Sic omnium ordinum . . . constitisse**, 'and so with all ranks the guiding principle had been mercy'; lit. 'the rôle of all ranks had been founded upon mercy.'

indutiarum: Caesar overstates his case; the action of the soldiers in chap. lxxiv was spontaneous; there were no formal *indutiae.*

homines imperitos . . . deceptos, 'simple-minded men entrapped by what they imagined to be a conference.' For this use of *per*, 'on the pretext of,' cf. *B. C.* III. lxxxii *ne per eius auctoritatem deceptus videretur. Per speciem, per simulationem, per causam*, with the genitive, are common.

§ 5. **Neque . . . se . . . postulare, quibus rebus**, 'he was making no demands whereby.'

illorum humilitate, 'on the strength of their humiliation,' ablative of cause.

§ 6. **Neque enim . . . alia de causa**, &c.: this sentence explains *contra se* in the previous line.

sex legiones . . . septimamque. Cf. chap. xxxviii.

tot tantasque classes: presumably Caesar refers to the fleet in which the Pompeians sailed to Dyrrachium (chaps. xxv, xxviii), the seven ships which Domitius took to Marseilles (chap. xxxiv), and the seventeen ships and *multa minora navigia* fitted out at Domitius's advice by the Massiliots (chap. lvi).

summissos, 'sent to take command.'

§ 7. **propter diuturnitatem pacis**: there had been no serious disturbance since the conclusion of the Sertorian war (see note on chap. lxi): *provincia* here means either (1) both the Spanish provinces, or (2) 'his sphere of duty', 'his command'.

§ 8. **Omnia haec . . . parari**, 'it was against himself that all these preparations had now for a long time been organized':

the present tense, with *iam pridem*, *iam diu*, *iam dudum*, expresses an action begun in the past but continuing to the present.

in se novi . . . in se iura . . . in se aetatis: in these three instances *se* is accusative, 'against himself'; but lower down the phrase *in se uno* (ablative) means 'in his case alone'.

novi generis imperia constitui: see note on chap. ii and Introduction B.

ad portas, 'close outside the gates.' Cf. chap. v *ad urbem*.

bellicosissimas: this epithet seems at first sight to contradict the previous phrase *propter diuturnitatem pacis*: probably, however, it is meant to emphasize the facilities which Spain afforded for raising auxiliary forces—facilities of which the Pompeian generals fully took advantage (see chap. xxxix and the present chapter).

tot annos: from 54 to 49; furthermore in 52, while sole consul, Pompey actually entered the city (see Introduction B).

§ 9. **ne ex praetura**, &c. Cf. chap. vi, note on *privatis*.

per paucos. Cf. chap. xxii *factione paucorum*.

aetatis excusationem. Kraner and Hofmann think that Caesar must be referring to the age of some of the *proconsules ad urbem* (chap. v) who were appointed by the Senate to raise troops and hold commands (chap. vi).

§ 10. **in se uno non servari**, &c.: Caesar passes over all the main difficulties in connexion with his return from Gaul (see Introduction B), and merely complains that he was not allowed, as other generals had been, to celebrate a triumph at Rome at the conclusion of his victorious campaigns, and then disband his army.

§ 11. **neque nunc id agere ut . . . teneat ipse . . . sed ne**, 'and his present object was not to keep for himself . . . but to prevent.'

CHAPTER LXXXVI

§ 1. **ex ipsa significatione**, 'from the plain expression of their feelings which they gave.'

ultro . . . ferrent, 'should actually be presented with their discharge' (Long).

§ 2. **neque enim . . . posse**, 'for there could be no security, though any number of pledges were given.'

§ 3. **res huc deducitur**, 'they came to this decision.' Cf. *huc deduxerat rem*, chap. lxii.

sacramentum dicere: i. e. to himself.

a Caesare cavetur, 'Caesar pledged his word.'

CHAPTER LXXXVII

§ 1. **Addit etiam ut**, 'he issues instructions also that': *addit* introduces a command and is therefore followed by *ut*.

quae sint penes milites suos: this clause explains and limits the previous relative clause, 'the things, that is, which were in the possession of his own troops.'

§ 2. **in ius**, 'for decision,' 'to get him to decide.'

§ 3. **cum stipendium . . . flagitarentur**: *flagito* in the active, like *rogo*, can take a double accusative; in chap. lxxi however it follows the construction used with *peto*.

cuius illi . . . dicerent: *cuius=et eius* (*stipendi*), and *dicerent* (as well as *flagitarentur*) depends upon *cum* in the previous line.

§ 4. **eo biduo**, 'within the next two days'; Aug. 3 and 4. Cf. *eo triduo*, chap. xviii.

reliquas, 'the remaining legions' of the escort, not, as one would suppose, of his whole army. From *B. C.* II. xix we learn that within a few days of Afranius's capitulation Caesar dispatched two legions under Cassius to *Hispania ulterior*. Caesar had in all six legions, so that the escort must have consisted of four, two in advance and two in rear of the Pompeians.

§ 5. **Hoc eius praescripto**, 'in accordance with these instructions of Caesar.'

ibi: the distance by road from Lérida to the Var is about 480 miles. Allowing for several short halts on the way, Stoffel calculates that Calenus reached the Var by about September 22. August, it must be remembered, contained at this time only twenty-nine days.

EXERCISES

I–X

1. Caesar was resolved to stand by the consuls provided that they were ready to act with boldness and determination.
2. After several senators had expressed more moderate views, the consul reluctantly agreed to withdraw his motion.
3. At the close of the meeting he promised to send a messenger to inform Caesar of what had taken place.
4. It seems that you will be influenced in this matter by the fact that you have fallen deeply in debt.
5. If I do not shortly receive a favourable answer I shall have to take measures to insure the safety of my life.
6. Nothing would persuade him to break this ancient precedent.
7. For nine years you have served the state under my command; be now the champions of my reputation and of my honour.
8. I have always regarded the claims of the state as superior to those of private friendship.
9. We are ready to have recourse to every expedient in order to arrive at a peaceable settlement of the points in dispute.
10. After considering the question he discontinued the levy and sent dispatches to his friends at Ariminum.

XI–XX

1. Caesar's refusal to disband his troops makes me absolutely despair of the safety of the state.
2. Caesar trusted to the friendly feelings displayed by the citizens, and promised to withdraw the garrison.
3. I thank you for your advice, but do not think the matter is one for me to decide.

4. It was reported that the consul had given orders for sentries to be posted to guard the treasury.
5. We have just heard of your arrival, and have come to promise our support.
6. The deserters escaped over the river, destroyed the bridge and encamped close to the walls.
7. He was earnestly requested to place his artillery in position and to assign to his men severally special duties in the defence of the city.
8. On the day of Caesar's arrival Curio was put in charge of the work of fortifying the camp.
9. To prevent his men from losing heart, he concealed the fact that the position was critical.
10. Soon afterwards they learnt Domitius's plan and resolved to take measures to secure their safety.

XXI–XXX

1. He regarded it as of the utmost importance that the walls should be guarded by a continuous line of sentries.
2. They were given permission to leave the camp, but they afterwards asked to be allowed to return.
3. After complaining that they had not shown a proper gratitude he dismissed them, struck camp and proceeded on his way.
4. In the interest of the general well-being I regard an interview as most desirable.
5. I cannot discover for certain whether your object in doing this is to injure me or to help me.
6. I am not much surprised that you have at last discovered that discussion is useless.
7. The ships had returned from Dyrrachium and the soldiers had already embarked, when at the moment of departure the town was attacked.
8. Pompey's men are just going to sail: attack the town at once, but look out for ambuscades.
9. Caesar was most anxious to complete his work at once, and

determined to seize the first opportunity of pursuing the enemy.

10. As soon as he heard that the naval repairs were completed he gave orders for the thirteenth legion to be transferred to Africa.

XXXI–XL

1. You will not be allowed to land your son here. Get your anchor up and leave before noon.
2. Mainly owing to Cato's obstructive tactics, Caesar failed to persuade the Senate to share with him the duties of government.
3. After wasting several days in useless discussion, Caesar determined to make no distinction between supporters and opponents.
4. There was some danger that Caesar's presence might cause the citizens to be forgetful of Pompey's former services.
5. Both of you have shown yourselves good friends of our city: it is our duty to observe an impartial neutrality.
6. Caesar entrusted the direction of the siege to Trebonius and ordered him to have twelve warships built at once.
7. Tell Fabius that the enemy are holding the pass: his business is to force his way over and advance rapidly against Afranius.
8. Further Spain is divided into Lusitania and Baetica by the river Anas (*Anas*, gen. *Anae*).
9. He paid his debts by borrowing money from all his richest friends.
10. In order to protect our foragers we were necessarily obliged to divide our forces into two parts.

XLI–L

1. It was your fault that the bridge was not repaired in time for the troops to cross on that day.
2. To complete the entrenchments timber had to be brought from the other camp, which was several miles away.
3. The enemy anticipated Caesar's attack on the hill and forced his troops to retire.

4. They thought that they might have proved victorious, if they had fought in open and scattered order.
5. What had occurred was unexpected, but they hoped by persistent courage to repair the loss they had sustained.
6. Although the fighting continued for five hours before the cavalry succeeded in covering our retreat, yet our casualties were only fifty killed and three hundred wounded.
7. One side had the advantage of numbers, the other of position; and after the engagement both claimed the victory.
8. It is said that the storm was so violent that both bridges were carried away and no one could cross the river.
9. We saw that large provision of corn ought to have been made earlier, since now we were quite unable to obtain supplies.
10. The enemy were able to concentrate their fire, and it was therefore difficult to complete the work of repairing the bridge.

LI–LX

1. The soldiers guarding the convoy advanced recklessly, without observing any discipline or obeying any recognized commander.
2. If we cannot requisition supplies from the neighbouring states, the men's physique will be seriously impaired by the scarcity of food.
3. On the receipt at Rome of exaggerated reports of these circumstances there were numerous desertions to Pompey.
4. I was ordered to take troops over the river and to start building a bridge from both banks at once.
5. Caesar was informed by the troops, who had been detailed to protect the camp, that his foragers had been headed off and cut to pieces.
6. Brutus was in command of the majority of these ships, which were manned by the above-mentioned herdsmen.
7. A desperate struggle ensued, marked by great valour on both sides.

8. Courage rather than skill won the day : seven of the enemy's ships were sunk and the rest were captured.
9. After the completion of the bridge the enemy were compelled to confine their foraging expeditions within narrower limits.
10. They promised implicit obedience to his orders and hoped that the question of corn-supplies would thus be solved.

LXI–LXX

1. We can only reach the enemy's camp by making a long détour : to rectify this let us adopt the following plan.
2. The scouts brought word that no ford had yet been discovered, although the work was proceeding continuously.
3. I fear that the only course left to us is to retire.
4. Tell Caesar that we want at any cost to overtake the cavalry and that the trouble and danger involved are of no account.
5. We certainly ought to have tried to postpone the advance until the following day.
6. He overheard what they said and brought back word that the enemy could easily be prevented from entering the pass.
7. The fact that soldiers are liable to lose courage if they fight by night I take as an argument that we must start by day.
8. If we wish to cross this broken ground in safety, we shall have to help each other and pass along our arms from hand to hand.
9. Every one knows that the enemy are short of food and must return to Ilerda.
10. After crossing the plain Caesar came to a hill, but without stopping for a moment he wheeled round it and continued his advance.

LXXI–LXXX

1. Do not hesitate to make use of this magnificent opportunity : the enemy have shown signs of panic and must certainly retreat.

2. It is a general's business to lose as few men as possible, and Caesar hoped to spare the troops who had served him so well.
3. When they had given up all hope of advancing they resolved to run up a rampart between the camp and the river.
4. Thank you for sparing us: we owe our lives to your clemency.
5. One of the two generals returned unexpectedly with his bodyguard and broke off the intercourse between the soldiers.
6. Every one swore to take no action on his own initiative: all hope of an immediate settlement was given up and hostilities were resumed.
7. If any of the enemy's soldiers are still in our camp, be sure to find them and send them back.
8. Tarraco is fifty miles from Ilerda, and the enemy will be harassing our rearguard all the way.
9. The only safe method was to allow no trooper to leave the line, and to halt only on high ground.
10. When Caesar noticed that the enemy had halted to rest their troops, he ordered his main body to press on.

LXXXI–LXXXVII

1. We must invest their camp with entrenchments, to prevent the sorties to which they will be forced to have recourse in order to obtain water.
2. A battle he considered for many reasons to be undesirable, and especially because the camps were so close together.
3. Caesar gave orders for his men to remain under arms until sunset, and for a close watch to be kept along the river-bank.
4. Finally, on August 2, all hope of escape was abandoned and Afranius asked for merciful terms.
5. Caesar complained that it was the generals alone who had failed to do their duty.
6. The army will be disbanded immediately and no one will

be harmed or compelled to take the oath of allegiance against his will.

7. In spite of their urgent demands Afranius refused to pay his men before the proper day.
8. We had to pitch our tents in a most unfavourable position, far from any water.
9. If you promise to leave the province, I swear that I will not prevent you from doing so.
10. Do not be angry with us or with our men merely because we have been anxious to prove our loyalty to Pompey.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

town (modern Ascoli) of the district of Picenum. (xv)

Asia. The Roman Province of Asia, formed out of the kingdom of Pergamum. It included Mysia, Lydia, Caria, and Phrygia. (iv)

Attiānus. *Adj.* of Attius. (xiii)

Attius. One of the Pompeian leaders at Sulmo, a city of the Paeligni in central Italy. He was himself a Paelignian. (xviii)

Attius Vārus, P. A Pompeian general who, on being deserted by his troops near Auximum in Picenum, crossed over to Africa and took possession of the Province, 49. In the course of the year he defeated Caesar's general, Curio. He fought at Thapsus in 46, and was killed at Munda in 45. (xii)

Ausetāni. A Spanish tribe inhabiting the district at the extreme SE. of the Pyrenees. (lx)

Auximas. An inhabitant of Auximum. (xiii)

Auximum. A fortified town (modern Osimo) in Picenum, in N. Italy. (xii)

Britannia. Great Britain. (liv)

Brundisīni. The inhabitants of Brundisium. (xxv)

Brundisium. The chief Italian port (modern Brindisi) on the South Adriatic. (xxiv)

Bruttii. The inhabitants of Bruttium, the district in the extreme S. of Italy. (xxx)

Brūtus, D. Iūnius. He served under Caesar in Gaul, and commanded his fleet at the siege of Massilia in 49. He joined the conspiracy against Caesar in 44, and was betrayed to M. Antonius and put to death in 43. (xxxvi)

C. Abbreviation for the praenomen Gaius.

Caecilius Rūfus, L. Praetor in 57; one of the senators who surrendered to Caesar at Corfinium. (xxiii)

Caecilius, T. A Pompeian centurion killed outside Ilerda. (xlvi)

Caesar, C. Iūlius. *See* Introduction.

Caesar, L. A distant connexion of the great Caesar, and son of one of his officers in Gaul; employed as a messenger by Pompey. He afterwards served with the Pompeians in Africa, where he lost his life in 46. (viii)

Calagurritāni. The inhabitants of Calagurris, a Spanish town 78 miles NW. of Ilerda. (lx)

Calēnus, Q. Fūfius. One of Caesar's generals in Gaul and in the Civil War; he was consul in 47. After Caesar's death he served under M. Antonius, and died in 41. (lxxxvii)

Calidius, M. A senator who supported Caesar in Jan. 49. Caesar put him in command of Gallia Cisalpina, where he died in 48. (ii)

Camerīnum. A town in Umbria. (xv)

Campānus. *Adj.* of Campania, the district round Capua in S. Italy. (xiv)

Canīnius Rebilus, C. One of Caesar's generals in Gaul and in the Civil War. He served under Curio in Africa in 49, and was present at Thapsus in 46. (xxvi)

Cantabri. A strong Spanish people inhabiting a district on the north coast. (xxxviii)

Canusium. The modern Canosa, a town in Apulia. (xxiv)

Capitōlium. The temple of Jupiter Capitolinus at Rome, and more generally the whole of the hill on which this temple, among other buildings, stood. (vi)

Caesar's generals sent on in advance from Gaul to force the passage of the Pyrenees and begin operations against the Pompeians near Ilerda. (xxxvii)

Fānum (Fortūnae). Now Fano, a town in Umbria at the mouth of the Metaurus. (xi)

Faustus Sulla. *See* Sulla.

Firmum. Now Fermo, a town in Picenum. (xvi)

Frentāni. An Italian tribe inhabiting a district on the coast of the Adriatic, at about the latitude of Rome. (xxiii)

Fūfius Calēnus, Q. *See* Calenus.

Fulginius, Q. A centurion in Caesar's army, killed outside Ilerda. (xlvi)

Gallia. Gaul, including the provinces of Gallia Cisalpina and Gallia Narbonensis, together with the rest of the country between the Rhine and the Pyrenees, which was conquered by Caesar, and afterwards divided into the provinces of Aquitania, Lugdunensis, and Belgica. (vi)

Gallicus. *Adj.* of Gallia. (li)

Germānia. Germany. (vii)

Germānus. *Adj.* of Germania. (lxxxiii)

Gracchi. The Gracchi (1) Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, a great popular leader, who, as tribune of the *plebs* in 133, carried by revolutionary methods a law prohibiting the possession of large landed estates. His hostile attitude towards the Senate led to his murder before the end of his year of office.

(2) Gaius Sempronius Gracchus, brother of the last named. As tribune of the *plebs* in 123 and 122 he carried reforms far more extensive than those of his brother, and deprived the senate of some important privileges while he increased the power of the *equites* or rich business men. His enemies succeeded in overthrowing his popularity, and in 121 he fell during the riots to which his actions had led. (vii)

Graecia. Greece. (xxv)

Hadriāticus. *Adj.* of Hadria, the Adriatic Sea. (xxv)

Helvii. A tribe of Gallia Narbonensis, living on the banks of the Rhone, NE. of the Volcae Arecomici. (xxxv)

Hibērus. A river (modern Ebro) in Spain, flowing into the Mediterranean. (lx)

Hirrus, C. Lūcilius. Tribune of the *plebs* in 53; an adherent of Pompey who was in charge of a garrison at Camerinum. (xv)

Hispānia. Spain, including the two provinces of Hispania Citerior and Hispania Ulterior. (xxii)

Iācetāni. A tribe in NE. Spain, E. of Ilerda. (lx)

Igilium. A small island (modern Giglio) off the Italian coast, close to Cosa in Etruria. (xxxiv)

Īguvīnus. *Adj.* of Iguvium. (xii)

Īguvium. Now Gubbio, a town in Umbria. (xii)

Ilerda. Now Lérida, a town on the Sicoris (modern Segre) a tributary of the Ebro in N. Spain. (xxxviii)

Illurgavonenses. A tribe inhabiting the Spanish coast N. and S. of the Ebro. (lx)

Ītalia. Italy. (ii)

Iuba. King of Numidia. In 81 Pompey had restored Iuba's father to the Numidian throne, and in return for this Iuba actively supported Pompey in the Civil War. He joined with Attius Varus in defeating Curio in 49, and afterwards helped the Pompeians at

Marcellus, M. Claudius. Brother of the last-named, and one of the consuls for 51. In 49 he advocated a cautious policy but was overruled by the extreme wing of the Pompeians. He remained with Pompey until Pharsalus, and then retired to Mytilene. In 46 he was pardoned by Caesar, but was murdered on his way to Rome. He is the Marcellus who is twice mentioned by name in chapter ii.

Marrucīni. A tribe living on the Adriatic sea-board, S. of the Aternus in central Italy. (xxiii)

Marsi. A tribe living in an inland district of central Italy. (xv)

Massilia. Now Marseilles, the chief port of Gaul, founded by the Phocaeans of Asia Minor about B.C. 600. As a reward of loyalty it was allowed to remain independent when Gallia Narbonensis was formed into a Roman Province in 120. In 49 Massilia espoused Pompey's cause, but was besieged by Caesar and obliged to capitulate. (xxxiv)

Massiliensis. *Adj.* of Massilia. (xxxiv)

Mauretānia. The westernmost portion of N. Africa, now Western Algeria and Morocco. (vi)

Metellus Crēticus, L. Caecilius. One of the tribunes of the *plebs* for 49, and a strong Pompeian. He remained in Rome when his party fled, and attempted to prevent Caesar from appropriating the money in the sacred treasury. (xxxiii)

N. Abbreviation for the praenomen Numerius.

Narbo (Martius). Now Narbonne, an important town in S. Gaul, capital of the Province of Gallia Narbonensis. (xxxvii)

Nōricus. *Adj.* of Noricum, a mountainous kingdom S. of the Upper Danube, corresponding to the modern Carinthia and Styria. It was conquered by the Romans in B.C. 16. (xviii)

Ōceanus. The Atlantic Ocean. (xxxviii)

Octogēsa. A town on the Hiberus about twenty-eight miles from Ilerda: its exact site is unknown. (lxi)

Oscenses. The inhabitants of Osca, now Huesca, a Spanish town about sixty-four miles NW. of Ilerda. (lx)

Paeligni. A tribe of Central Italy, S. of the Aternus, whose chief towns were Corfinium and Sulmo.

Paelignus. A Paelignian. (xv)

Parthicus. *Adj.* of Parthia, a district SE. of the Caspian Sea. During the last century B.C. the Parthians extended their empire from the Indus to the Euphrates and threatened Syria and Asia Minor. It was chiefly owing to civil strife that their power gradually waned. (ix)

Petreius, M. Commander of the troops who defeated Catiline in 62. He was one of Pompey's generals in Spain from 55 to 49. After Ilerda he joined Pompey in Greece. He fought at Pharsalus and then at Thapsus, after which battle he committed suicide. (xxxviii)

Philippus, L. Marcius. (1) Consul in 56: he had married Atia, the widowed niece of Iulius Caesar, and was to a large extent responsible for the education of her son Octavianus (afterwards the Emperor Augustus). Being of a cautious nature he remained

captured by Caesar at Corfinium. (xxiii)

Rūfus, L. Caecilius. Praetor in 57; one of the senators captured by Caesar at Corfinium. (xxiii)

Rūfus, L. Vībullius. One of Pompey's officers captured at Corfinium. He was released by Caesar and sent by Pompey to Spain, where he again fell into Caesar's hands. The latter used him as an envoy to Pompey in Greece in 48. (xv)

Rūfus, M. Caelius. A senator who joined Caesar in 49, and was made praetor by him in 48. He attempted to pass revolutionary measures by force of arms, but was defeated and killed. Some of his correspondence with Cicero still exists. (ii)

Rutēni. A tribe of S. Gaul living in the district now occupied by the department of Aveyron. (li)

Rutilius. *See* Lupus.

Sallyes. A tribe of Gallia Narbonensis, living to the immediate N. and NW. of Marseilles. (xxxv)

Sardinia. Sardinia, an island in the Mediterranean. (xxx)

Sāturnīnus, L. Appuleius. A democratic leader who as tribune in 100 B.C. introduced various revolutionary measures. Though at first a popular hero he alienated sympathy by his sanguinary methods, was declared a public enemy, and was killed by the mob. (vii)

Saxa. *See* Decidius.

Scipio, Q. Caecilius Metellus Pius. By birth a Scipio, he was adopted by Metellus the colleague of Pompey in the Sertorian War in Spain. In 52 Pompey, while sole consul, married Scipio's daughter Cornelia, and made Scipio his partner in the consulship. He was an ardent supporter of Pompey, and in 49 was given the province of Syria. He fought at Pharsalus in 48, commanded the Pompeians at Thapsus in 46, and after the defeat there committed suicide. (i)

Scrībōnius. *See* Libo.

Sertōrius, Q. He served as general under the great democratic leader Marius. After Marius's death he went to Spain, where he organized a powerful army and for many years kept his enemies at bay. Even Pompey failed to conquer him, but he was finally assassinated in 72. (lxi)

Sex. Abbreviation for the praenomen Sextus.

Sicilia. Sicily, an island in the Mediterranean Sea. (xxv)

Sicoris. Now the River Segre, a tributary of the Hiberus (Ebro) in Spain. (xl)

Spinther. *See* Lentulus.

Sulla, L. Cornēlius. After winning renown as a general in various wars he was elected consul for 88 and given the command against Mithridates. Marius the great democratic leader immediately raised a revolution and drove him from Rome. However, he returned at the head of his army, expelled Marius, and executed many of the latter's adherents. For four years he was absent in the East, during which time Marius came back to Rome and instituted in his turn massacres of his opponents. Marius died in 86, but when Sulla returned to Italy in 83 he found the Marian party still in power. In the following year he completely defeated them and was elected Dictator. He now proceeded partly by legislation and partly by the execution of his enemies to

VOCABULARY

ā *or* **ab,** *prep. with abl.*, by; from; since, after; *a fronte*, in front.

abdūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3 *v. a.*, withdraw, take *or* lead away.

abhorreo, -ui, —, 2 *v. n.*, be averse from, disinclined to (*with* ab).

abripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3 *v. a.*, carry off, remove.

absens, -ntis, *adj.*, absent.

absum, abesse, abfui, *v. n.*, be absent, distant.

abundo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, be well supplied with (*with abl.*).

ac *or* **atque,** *conj.*, and, and moreover.

accēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, approach: *ad Caesaris amicitiam accedere*, to join Caesar's side, c. xlviii, lii.

accido, -cidi, —, 3 *v. n.*, happen.

accipio, -cepi, -ceptum, 3 *v. a.*, receive; *detrimentum accipere*, to sustain a loss.

ācer, acris, acre, *adj.*, eager, keen.

acerbē, *adv.*, bitterly; *superl.* acerbissime.

acerbitas, -ātis, *f.*, bitterness, bitter spirit, malice.

acervus, -i, *m.*, heap, stack; *see note*, c. xlviii.

acies, -ēi, *f.*, line (*of battle*), fighting line.

ācriter, *adv.*, fiercely, eagerly, keenly; *superl.* acerrime.

actio, -ōnis, *f.*, action: *actiones*, official actions, public functions, c. v.

actuārius, -a, -um, *adj.* (*with* navis *or* navigium), easily moved, swift; used for business (*as opposed to fighting*), transport.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, towards; at; near; for the purpose of; *ad spem*, in the hope, c. xxix.

addo, -didi, -ditum, 3 *v. a.*, add.

addūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3 *v. a.*, bring, bring to; induce.

adeo, -ii, -itum, 4 *v. n.*, approach, go to.

adeo, *adv.*, so, to such an extent.

adfero, -ferre, attuli, allātum, *irreg. v. a.*, bring, bring to, cause, render.

adficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.*, influence, affect; *particip.* affectus, weakened, broken (*valetudine*, c. xxxi).

adfingo, -finxi, -fictum, 3 *v. a.*, invent, add falsely.

adfīnitas, -ātis, *f.*, alliance by marriage.

adhaereo, -haesi, -haesum, 2 *v. n.*, stick on, go aground on.

adhibeo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, use, employ.

adhortor, -tatus, 1 *v. dep. a.*, encourage, urge, exhort.

adigo, -ēgi, -actum, 3 *v. a.*, drive to, bring to: *idem ius iurandum adigere Afranium*, to make A. take the same oath, c. lxxvi.

adimo, -ēmi, -emptum, 3 *v. a.*, take away.

aditus, -ūs, *m.*, entrance, approach, access; c. xxxi, lxxiv, facilities, opening, opportunity.

adiungo, -iunxi, -iunctum, 3 *v. a.*, add to, join to.

adiūtor, -ōris, *m.*, helper, supporter, promoter.

adiuvo, -iūvi, -iūtum, 1 *v. a.*, help, support.

administrātio, -ōnis, *f.*, aid, assistance; *administrationes portus* c. xxv, the use *or* working of the harbour.

administro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, manage, arrange.

admiror, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a and n.*, wonder.

adorior, -ortus, 4 *v. dep. a. and n.*, set upon, attack.

adorno, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, prepare, furnish, equip.

adsum, adesse, adfui, *v. irreg. n.*, be present, be close at hand.

adulātio, -ōnis, *f.*, flattery.

adulescens, -entis, *c.*, *participle used as noun*, young man (or woman) from fifteen to thirty years old, or sometimes still older.

adveho, -vexi, -vectum, 3 *v. a.*, bring, convey.

advenio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 *v. a. and n.*, reach, come to, arrive at.

advento, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. freq.*, come continually nearer, approach.

adventus, -ūs, *m.*, approach, coming, arrival.

adversārius, -i, *m.*, opponent, enemy.

adversus, *prep. with acc.*, against; c. xlvi, *adversus montem*, up the hill.

adverto, -ti, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, *with* animum (*sometimes written* animadverto), perceive, notice.

advolo, -āvi, -ātum, 3 *v. n.*, fly to, hurry to.

aegrē, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty, with effort.

aequitas, -ātis, *f.*, moderation, fairness.

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, level (*locus*, c. xli, lxxi); fair, favourable: *aequo animo*, patiently, calmly, coolly.

aerārium, -i, *n.*, the treasury (in the Temple of Saturn at Rome).

aes, aeris, *n.*, copper; *aes alienum*, the money of another, *hence* debt.

aestimātio, -ōnis, *f.*, estimate, valuation.

aetas, -ātis, *f.*, age; *superior aetas*, former generation.

ager, agri, *m.*, field, land, territory.

agger, -eris, *m.*, artificial mound; dam, c. xxv; wood, brushwood (or other materials used in bridge-building), c. xl; materials for a military rampart, c. xlii.

aggredior, aggressus, 3 *v. dep. a. and n.*, attack.

agmen, -inis, *n.*, column, army, line (of troops on the march); *novissimum, extremum agmen*, rearguard.

ago, ēgi, actum, 3 *v. a.*, do, act, drive, push forward, move up, advance; *agere aliquid*, or *de aliqua re* (*cum aliquo*), to take steps about, proceed with; urge, plead; treat of, discuss; negotiate, intrigue; *gratias agere*, to express gratitude.

ālārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, on the wing (*of an army*), *so*, auxiliary, allied (*because the allies were generally stationed on the wings*).

albeo, —, —, 2 *v. n.*, be white; *albente caelo*, at daybreak, c. lxviii.

aliās, *adv.*; *alias . . . alias*, at one time . . . at another; *alias . . . dein rursus*, sometimes . . . then again.

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hostile; belonging to others; *aes alienum*, debt, c. iv.

aliquando, *adv.*, at some time; at last, c. xxvi.

aliqui, -qua, -quod, *indef. pron. adj.*, some.

aliquis, -quid, *indef. pron.*, some one, some thing.
aliquot, *indef. indecl. num.*, some, several.
alius, -a, -ud, *adj.*, other; *alii . . . alii*, some . . . others; *alius . . . in aliam partem*, some in one direction . . . some in another.
alo, alui, alitum *or* altum, 3 *v. a.*, maintain, feed.
alter, -era, -erum, *adj.*, another, a second; *alter . . . alter*, the one . . . the other.
altitūdo, -inis, *f.*, height, depth.
altus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, deep.
ambo, -bae, -bo, *num.*, both.
amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship, alliance.
amīcus, -i, *m.*, friend.
amitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, lose.
amplius, *comp. adv.* (*positive* ampliter), more; *the following* quam *is always omitted before numerals.*
amplus, -a, -um, *adj.*, distinguished, honourable; *superl.* amplissimus.
an, *interr. particle*, whether; *-ne . . . an*, whether . . . or.
ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor.
angulus, -i, *m.*, corner.
angustē, *adv.*, within narrow limits.
angustiae, -arum, *f. pl.*, narrowness; defile, difficulty.
angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow, confined.
animadverto *or* **animum adverto**, -ti, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, perceive, notice.
animus, -i, *m.*, mind, feeling, courage; *aequo animo*, patiently, calmly, coolly.
annōna, -ae, *f.*, yearly produce of corn; price of corn, c. lii.
annus, -i, *m.*, year.
ante, *prep. with acc.*, before; *adv.* before, earlier; *conj.*, *ante . . . quam*, before.
antea, *adv.*, previously.
antecēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, to go in front, precede.
antecursor, -ōris, *m.*, advanced guard, advanced patrol.
anteeo, -ii, —, 4 *v. n.*, take the lead, excel; anticipate.
antesignāni, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, soldiers who fought before the standards; *see note* c. xliii.
antīquitus, *adv.*, of old, from ancient times.
antīquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, old, ancient, former.
aperio, -erui, -ertum, 4 *v. a.*, open.
apertus, -a, -um, *particip. of* aperio, open; *apertum latus*, the exposed flank.
appello, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, call, call upon, appeal to; *regum appellandorum largitiones*, bribes to be received for granting the title of *rex*, c. iv.
appello, -puli, -pulsum, 3 *v. a.*, drive toward, drive against.
appeto, -īvi, -ītum, 3 *v. a.*, strive for, try to get.
appropinquo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, approach, come near.
aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, ready.
apud, *prep. with acc.*, in the presence of; *with* loqui, contionari, &c., apud *often* = to.
aqua, -ae, *f.*, water; *pl.* floods.
aquātor, -ōris, *m.*, water-carrier.
aquor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. n.*, obtain *or* fetch water.
arbitror, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a. and n.*, think, consider.
arcānō, *adv.*, secretly, in private.
arcesso, -īvi, -ītum, 3 *v. a.*, summon.
argūmentum, -i, *n.*, argument, evidence, proof.
arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons; *rem ad arma deducere*, to settle the question by war, c. iv; *in armis esse*, to be in arms, c. ix, xlii; *arma conferre cum aliquo*, to fight against some one, c. lxxiv.

armāmenta, -ōrum, *pl. n.*, implements; tackle *of a ship.*
armātūra, -ae, *f.*, armour, equipment.
armo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, furnish with weapons, arm, fit out, equip.
arrogantia, -ae, *f.*, presumption, pride.
artificium, -i, *n.*, ingenuity, dexterity.
ascendo, -di, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, climb, mount.
asper, -era, -erum, *adj.*, *of men*, rough, rude, hardy; *of ground*, rough, broken.
asservo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, watch, guard closely.
assuēfacio, -fēci, -factum, 3 *v. a*, habituate, accustom.
at, *conj.*, but.
atque *or* **ac,** *conj.*, and, and moreover, and so; *simul atque*, as soon as.
attingo, -tigi, -tactum, 3 *v. a.*, live near, border on; reach, gain.
attribuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, assign, appoint, bestow.
auctor, -ōris, *m.*, adviser.
auctōritas, -ātis, *f.*, will, decree, authority, power.
audācia, -ae, *f.*, daring, insolence.
audacter, *adv.*, boldly, confidently.
audeo, ausus, 2 *v. semi-dep. n.*, dare, have the courage, be ready to.
audio, -īvi, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, hear, listen to.
aufero, auferre, abstuli, ablātum, *v. irreg. a.*, carry away.
augeo, auxi, auctum, 2 *v. a.*, increase; *pass.*, grow.
aut, *conj.*, or; *aut . . . aut*, either . . . or.
autem, *conj.*, on the other hand, but, however, moreover.
auxiliāris, -e, *adj.*, helping, auxiliary, of *or* belonging to the auxiliaries; *pl.* auxiliaries, auxiliary troops.
auxilium, -i, *n.*, help, support, assistance; *pl.* auxiliaries, auxiliary troops, reinforcements.
averto, -ti, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, withdraw, turn aside, divert; *in aversos tela conicere*, to rain spears upon them when their backs were turned, c. lxxix.

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign; barbarian.
bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, warlike.
bellum, -i, *n.*, war.
bene, *adv.*, well, successfully; *comp.* melius; *superl.* optimē.
beneficiārii, -ōrum, *pl. m.*, privileged soldiers.
beneficium, -i, *n.*, kindness, service.
biduum, -i, *n.*, period of two days.
bīni, -ae, -a, *num. distr.*, two each; *bina castra*, two camps, c. lxxiv.
bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good, fair; *bona*, privileges, c. vii; *comp.* melior; *superl.* optimus.
brevis, -e, *adj.*, short.
brevitas, -ātis, *f.*, shortness, smallness.

cado, cecidi, cāsum, 3 *v. n.*, fall, be killed.
caecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, blind, hidden, concealed.
caedo, cecīdi, caesum, 3 *v. a.*, cut down, fell (*timber*).
caelum, -i, *n.*, sky.
caetrātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, armed with the *caetra*, or light Spanish shield, light armed; *see note* c. xxxix.
cālo, -ōnis, *m.*, soldier's servant, camp follower.
campester, -tris, -tre, *adj.*, level.
campus, -i, *m.*, plain.
capio, cēpi, captum, 3 *v. a.*, take, seize; *consilium capere*, form a plan, adopt measures, resolve.
carīna, -ae, *f.*, keel.
carpo, -psi, -ptum, 3 *v. a.*, harass, weaken (*lit.* pluck at).

carrus, -i, *m.*, two-wheeled wagon.
castellum, -i, *n.*, fort, stronghold, fortified station.
castīgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, find fault with, blame, rebuke.
castra, -ōrum, *pl. n.*, camp.
casus, -ūs, *m.*, misfortune, disaster, fate.
causa, -ae, *f.*, reason, cause, motive; *iustior causa*, the fuller right, c. xxxv; causā, *abl. sing. with gen.*, on account of, for the sake of.
caveo, cāvi, cautum, 2 *v. a. and n.*, beware of, take precautions, pledge one's word.
cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3 *v. n.*, yield, retreat.
celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, quick, rapid.
celeritas, -ātis, *f.*, speed, swiftness.
celeriter, *adv.*, quickly, speedily.
cēlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, hide.
censeo, -ui, -um, 2 *v. n.*, consider, be of opinion, propose.
censor, -ōris, *m.*, censor; *see Introd. F.*
centuria, -ae, *f.*, century (*division of troops*); *see Introd. G.*
centuriātim, *adv.*, by centuries.
centurio, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion; *see Introd. G.*
cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3 *v. a.*, perceive, see.
certāmen, -inis, *n.*, struggle, contest.
certē, *adv.*, certainly, at least.
certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, certain, sure, fixed; *comp.* certior; *certiorem facere*, to inform.
cēterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the other, the remaining.
cingo, cinxi, cinctum, 3 *v. a.*, surround, flank, screen, envelop.
circā, *prep. with acc.*, round, in the neighbourhood of; *adv.*, around.
circiter, *adv.*, about; *prep. with acc.*, about.
circuitus, -ūs, *m.*, circuit, detour.
circulor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. n.*, form circles, gather in groups.
circum, *prep. with acc.*, round, in the neighbourhood of, among; *adv.*, around.
circumdo, -dedi, -datum (*inf.* -dăre), 1 *v. a.*, surround, hem in.
circumdūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3 *v. a.*, lead round, conduct round.
circumeo, -ii, -itum, 4 *v. a. and n.*, go round, visit; outflank.
circumfundo, -fūdi, -fūsum, 3 *v. a.*, pour round, envelop.
circummitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, send round.
circummūnio, -īvi, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, throw fortifications round, invest.
circummūnitio, -ōnis, *f.*, lines of circumvallation, investment.
circumrētio, -īvi, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, enclose with a net, ensnare.
circumscrībo, -psi, -ptum, 3 *v. a.*, restrain, hinder the free action of.
circumsisto, -steti, —, 3 *v. a.*, place oneself round, surround.
circumvenio, -vēni, -ventum, 3 *v. a.*, encompass, envelop, surround, cut off.
citerior, -us, *comp. adj.*, on this side, nearer.
citra, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of; *adv.* hither, on this side.
citrō, *adv.*, hither; *only used in the phrase* ultro citroque, hither and thither, backwards and forwards, from both sides.
cīvīlis, -e, *adj.*, belonging to citizens, civil.
cīvis, -is, *c.*, citizen, fellow citizen.
cīvitas, -ātis, *f.*, state, community.
clam, *adv.*, secretly, without being noticed; *prep. with abl.*, without the knowledge of.
clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, shout, cry.
classis, -is, *f.*, fleet.
claudo, -si, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, shut; *claudere novissimum agmen*, to bring up the rear, form the rearguard, c. lxxix.

clāvus, -i, *m.*, nail, rivet.
coëo, -ii, —, 4 *v. n.*, go *or* come together, unite, draw together.
coepi, coeptus sum, *v. defect. a. and n.*, begin.
coërceo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, keep in check, restrain, control.
cōgito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, consider, think of, take thought for; be minded, meditate, plan.
cognosco, -nōvi, -nitum, 3 *v. a.*, learn, know.
cōgo, coēgi, coactum, 3 *v. a.*, compel, force; collect; summon (the senate).
cohors, -hortis, *f.*, cohort (*division of troops*); *see Introd. G.*
cohortor, -atus, 1 *v. dep. a.*, encourage, rally.
cōicio *or* **cōnicio**, coniēci, coniectum, 3 *v. a.*, *of weapons*, to cast, hurl; *of persons*, to throw together; *in fugam coniectis adversariis*, when the enemy had taken to flight.
collaudo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, praise *or* commend very much.
collēga, -ae, *m.*, colleague.
collēgium, -i, *n.*, corporate body.
colligo, -ēgi, -ectum, 3 *v. a.*, collect; *se colligere*, rally.
collis, -is, *m.*, hill, rising ground, high ground.
colloco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, place, fix, post, station, establish.
colloquium, -i, *n.*, conversation, conference, intercourse.
colloquor, -locūtus, 3 *v. dep. n.*, hold a conversation, a parley, *or* a conference, converse.
colōnus, -i, *m.*, farmer, inhabitant of a colony.
comitiālis, -e, *adj.*, of or belonging to the comitia; *dies comitialis*, a day on which the comitia are held.
comitium, -i, *n.*, a place near the forum, NE. of the Rostra, used for public meetings; *pl.* comitia, assembly of the people for voting; *so* elections.
commeātus, -ūs, *m.*, going to and fro; convoy, provision train; supplies; leave of absence, furlough.
commemoro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, call to mind, make mention of, mention, relate.
commendātio, -ōnis, *f.*, recommendation, favourable introduction.
commendo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, recommend, entrust, surrender.
commentārius, -i, *m.*, commentary, memoir.
comminus, *adv.*, in close contest, hand to hand.
committo, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, give, entrust; *committere proelium*, begin, join battle.
commodē, *adv.*, conveniently; *comp.* commodius.
commodum, -i, *n.*, convenience, advantage.
commodus, -a, -um, *adj.*, easy, convenient, advantageous.
commoror, -atus, 1 *v. dep.*, remain, stay.
communio, -īvi, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, fortify strongly, secure, entrench.
commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general, public.
commūtātio, -ōnis, *f.*, change, alteration.
commūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, change entirely, alter wholly.
compello, -puli, -pulsum, 3 *v. a.*, drive together, force, constrain.
comperio, -peri, -pertum, 4 *v. a.*, ascertain, learn.
compleo, -plēvi, -plētum, 2 *v. a.*, fill up, complete; throng; supply fully, furnish abundantly; man.
complūres, -a, *pl. adj.*, several, many, very many.
compōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, settle, arrange, adjust.

comporto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, bring together, collect.
compositio, -ōnis, *f.*, agreement, settlement.
concēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. a.*, grant, concede, give leave.
concilio, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, gain, bring about, procure (by friendly means).
concilium, -i, *n.*, meeting, council.
concipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 *v. a.*, take to oneself; understand; *scelus concipere*, to commit a crime; to have criminal designs.
concitātus, -a, -um, *particip. of* concito, eager, at full speed.
conclāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, shout together; shout a military order, c. lxvi, lxvii, lxix.
concurro, -curri, -cursum, 3 *v. n.*, run *or* rush together.
concurso, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. freq. n.*, hurry up and down.
concursus, -ūs, *m.*, gathering, concourse, crowd.
condicio, -ōnis, *f.*, agreement, stipulation, condition, terms.
confero, conferre, contuli, collātum, *irreg. v. a.*, collect; *se conferre*, to betake oneself, go; *arma conferre cum*, to fight against; *signis collatis*, as the standards were bunched together, c. lxxi.
confertus, -a, -um, *particip. of* confercio, crowded, massed together.
confestim, *adv.*, at once, without delay.
conficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.*, finish, complete, make up.
confīdo, -fīsus, 3 *v. semi-dep. n.*, trust, believe; trust in, rely upon (*with dat. or abl.*).
confirmātio, -ōnis, *f.*, strengthening, encouragement.
confirmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, make firm, strengthen, encourage, give confidence to; assert, affirm; confirm, settle.
confiteor, -fessus, 2 *v. dep. a. and n.*, admit, acknowledge.
conflicto, -āvi, -ātum, *v. freq. a.*, strike forcibly; *pass.*, to be vexed by, to be harassed by, to suffer from.
confligo, -flixi, -flictum, 3 *v. n.*, contend, fight, combat.
confugio, -fūgi, —, 3 *v. n.*, flee for refuge, take refuge, take shelter.
congredior, -gressus, 3 *v. dep.*, meet, engage, fight.
congressus, -ūs, *m.*, meeting, encounter.
cōnicio, *see* cōicio.
cōnītor, -nīsus *or* -nixus, 3 *v. dep.*, strive, press toward, struggle up.
coniungo, -iunxi, -iunctum, 3 *v. a.*, join, unite, connect; *coniunctus*, near, close to, c. xl, lxiv.
cōnor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a. and n.*, attempt, try, endeavour, undertake.
conquiesco, -quiēvi, -quiētum, 3 *v. n.*, rest, sleep.
conquīro, -quīsīvi, —, 3 *v. a.*, seek after, search for.
consanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.*, related by blood.
conscendo, -ndi, -nsum, *v. a. and n.*, mount; (*of ships*) board, embark.
conscrībo, -psi, -ptum, 3 *v. a.*, enlist, enroll, levy.
consector, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a.*, chase, pursue.
consentio, -sensi, -sensum, 4 *v. n.*, harmonize, agree, suit; plot together, conspire.
consequor, -secūtus, 3 *v. dep. a.*, follow, pursue, overtake; obtain, gain.
consero, -serui, -sertum, 3 *v. a.*, join; *manum* or *manus conserere*, to join battle.
conservo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, preserve, keep.
consilior, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. n.*, take counsel, consult.

consilium, -i, *n.*, plan, purpose, intention; arrangement, agreement; meeting, council (= concilium); *uno consilio,* with one accord, c. xx.

consisto, -stiti, -stitum, 3 *v. n.*, halt, take one's stand; consist in.

conspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight, view, presence.

conspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3 *v.a.*, get sight of, descry, perceive, see.

conspicor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a.*, sight, get sight of, observe.

constantia, -ae, *f.*, firmness, perseverance, consistency.

constituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, determine, settle; establish, found; post, draw up (*troops*); pitch (*tents*).

consto, -stiti, -stātum, 1 *v. n.*, stand firm; constat, *used impersonally*, it is certain, evident, well-known, undisputed.

consuesco, -suēvi, -suētum, 3 *v. n.*, be accustomed.

consuetūdo, -inis, *f.*, custom, habit, use.

consul, -ulis, *m.*, consul; *see Introd. F.*

consulāris, -e, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to a consul, consular.

consulātus, -ūs, *m.*, office of a consul, consulship.

consulo, -ului, -ultum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, consult, ask advice of (*with acc.*); have regard for, take counsel for (*with dat.*); *suae vitae durius consulere,* see note, c. xxii.

consulto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. freq. a.*, take counsel.

consultum, -i, *n.*, *senatus consultum,* decree of the senate.

consūmo, -mpsi, -mptum, 3 *v. a.*, spend, employ, consume, eat.

contendo, -di, -tum, 3 *v. n.*, hasten; fight; try.

contentio, -onis, *f.*, exertion, effort.

contentus, -a, -um, *particip. of* contineo, contented, satisfied.

contexo, -texui, -textum, 3 *v. a.*, plait, weave together.

continens, *particip. of* contineo, bordering on, adjoining; self-restrained, moderate; *comp.* continentior.

continenter, *adv.*, continuously.

contineo, -tinui, -tentum, 3 *v. a.*, hold *or* keep together, preserve; retain, restrain, hold back, keep under control; keep in position, c. lxxxiii.

contingo, -tigi, -tactum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, touch; keep in touch; happen.

continuo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, continue uninterruptedly.

contio, -ōnis, *f.*, meeting; speech.

contiōnor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. n.*, make a speech.

contrā, *prep. with acc.*, against, contrary to, in opposition to, over against, opposite to; *adv.*, against, on the other side, in opposition.

contraho, -traxi, -tractum, 3 *v. a.*, collect, concentrate.

contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, conflicting, contrary, opposite.

contribuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, unite, bring together (*in a league or union*), connect politically.

controversia, -ae, *f.*, quarrel, question, dispute.

contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, abuse, insult, affront.

contumēliōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, insolent, abusive.

conveho, -vexi, -vectum, 3 *v. a.*, bring together, collect.

convenio, -vēni, -ventum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, meet; come together; suit; be agreed upon.

conventus, -ūs, *m.*, meeting, assembly; corporation; burgess body.

converto, -ti, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, turn, change; *se* or *terga convertere,* to take to flight.

convīcium, -i, *n.*, reproach, abuse, insult, invective.
coorior, -ortus, 4 *v. dep. n.*, arise, break out.
cōpia, -ae, *f.*, plenty, abundance, supply; *pl.*, forces.
cōram, *adv.*, openly, in each others' presence, personally; *prep. with abl.*, before, in the presence of.
corium, -i, *n.*, skin, hide.
cornu, -ūs, *n.*, horn; wing of an army.
corpus, -oris, *n.*, body; hulk (*of a boat*).
corripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3 *v. a.*, seize upon, attack, catch.
cōtīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, daily; usual.
cōtīdiē, *adv.*, daily.
crātis, -is, *f.*, hurdle, wicker-work.
crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, numerous, frequent.
crēbrō, *adv.*, frequently, repeatedly.
cresco, crēvi, crētum, 3 *v. n.*, increase.
crūdēlitas, -ātis, *f.*, harshness, severity, cruelty, barbarism.
crūdēliter, *adv.*, harshly, cruelly; *superl.* crudelissime.
cum, *conj.*, when; since; *cum . . . tum*, both . . . and; not only . . . but also; *prep. with abl.*, with.
cuncti, -ae, -a, *pl. adj.*, all.
cunctor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. n.*, delay, hesitate.
cupidē, eagerly, zealously; *superl.* cupidissime.
cupio, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 3 *v. a.*, desire, wish.
cur, *adv.*, wherefore, why.
cūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, take care of; *with acc. and gerundive*, to see, take care *that something is done*.
cursus, -ūs, *m.*, rush, run, double; *magno cursu*, at full speed.
custōdia, -ae, *f.*, protection; guard, sentry, vedette.
custōdio, -īvi, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, watch, guard, hold in custody.
custōs, -ōdis, *c.*, guard, watch, attendant.

dē, *prep. with abl.*, from; down from; concerning; because of; *de nocte*, *de tertia vigilia*, during, in the night, the third watch.
dēbeo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, owe, be in duty bound to.
dēcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, withdraw, retire, depart.
decem, *card. num. adj.*, ten.
dēcerno, -crēvi, -crētum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, decide, determine, decree, vote; decide by combat, fight.
dēcerto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, fight it out, decide the contest.
decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, tenth.
dēcipio, -cēpi, -cēptum, 3 *v. a.*, ensnare, deceive, cheat.
dēclīvis, -e, *adj.*, inclining downwards, sloping.
decurio, -ōnis, *m.*, member of the senate of a *municipium*, town-councillor, *see Introd. F*; commander of a *decuria*, or small squadron of cavalry.
dēcurro, -cucurri *or* -curri, -cursum, 3 *v. n.*, run down, hurry down; betake oneself to, have recourse to.
dēditio, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender, capitulation.
dēdūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3 *v. a.*, lead, bring; lead astray, mislead; *with* naves, bring to port, c. xxx, xxxvi (*but more commonly* launch); *with* colonos, settle, conduct; *with* milites, quarter; *rem deducere*, to advance matters, to decide a question; *deducere rem ad otium*, or *ad arma*, to settle a dispute peaceably, *or* by fighting.
dēfendo, -di, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, repel, ward off; defend, protect.

dēfero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *v. irreg. a.*, bring down, deliver, report.
dēfessus, -a, -um, *particip. of* defetiscor, wearied, exhausted, fatigued.
dēficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, desert, forsake; fail, be wanting; *animo deficere*, lose heart, despair.
dēfīgo, -fixi, -fixum, 3 *v. a.*, fix, plant.
dēfīnio, -īvi, -ītum, 3 *v. a.*, limit, explain, state definitely.
dēfugio, -fūgi, —, 3 *v. a. and n.*, avoid, run away from; flee, escape.
dēicio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, throw down, beat down, drive out, dislodge; (*of lots*) to cast into the urn.
dēiectus, -a, -um, *particip. of* deicio, low-lying.
deinceps, *adv.*, one after another, in succession.
deinde *or* **dein,** *adv.*, after that, then, next.
dēlībero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, consider, discuss.
dēligo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3 *v. a.*, choose, pick out.
dēminuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, lessen, diminish.
dēmissē, *adv.*, humbly, modestly; *superl.* demississime.
dēmitto, -misi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, send down, let down; *se demittere*, to descend.
dēmonstro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, explain, show, indicate, mention.
dēmoror, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a.*, retard, prevent, counteract.
dēnārius, -i, *m.*, denarius, a Roman silver coin worth about $8\frac{2}{5}d.$
dēnego, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, refuse, deny.
dēnique, *adv.*, lastly, finally; only.
dēpōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, set down, deposit, unload.
dēporto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, carry, convey.
dēposco, -poposci, —, 3 *v. a.*, require, demand, claim.
dēprāvo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, pervert, seduce.
dēprecor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a.*, avert by prayer, plead against, protest against.
deprendo *or* **deprehendo,** -di, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, catch, seize, capture.
dēprimo, -pressi, -pressum, 3 *v. a.*, sink.
dērectus, -a, -um, *particip. of* dirigo *or* derigo, straight, steep.
descendo, -di, -sum, 3 *v. n.*, descend; stoop to, have recourse to, c. v, ix, lxxxi.
descisco, -īvi, -ītum, 3 *v. n.*, withdraw, revolt, desert.
dēsero, -rui, -rtum, 3 *v. a.*, abandon, desert.
dēsīdero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, wish for, want, miss; *pass.*, be missing, be lost.
despērātio, -ōnis, *f.*, hopelessness, despair.
destino, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, make fast, make firm; resolve, intend.
destringo, -inxi, -ictum, 3 *v. a.*, draw, unsheathe.
dēsum, dēesse, dēfui, *v. n.*, be wanting, fail in one's duty, fail to support (*with dat.*).
dētergeo, -rsi, -rsum, 2 *v. a.*, cleanse, wipe clean; strip off, break off.
dētrīmentum, -i, *n.*, loss, damage.
dēveho, -vexi, -vectum, 3 *v. a.*, carry, convey.
dēvincio, -vinxi, -vinctum, 4 *v. a.*, bind, unite closely, attack.
dēvinctus, -a, -um, *particip. of* devincio, devoted, greatly attached to.
dexter, -tera *or* -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right hand; *dextera* (sc. *manus*), the right hand.
dīco, dixi, dictum, 3 *v. a.*, say, tell,

mention, declare, speak; *sacramentum dicere*, take an oath of allegiance.

dies, diēi, *m.* (*sometimes f. in sing.*), day; *in dies*, from day to day, c. lii; *dies extrahere*, to spin out time, c. xxxii.

differo, differre, distuli, dīlātum, 3 *v. irreg. a. and n.*, separate; put off, postpone; differ.

difficilis, -e, *adj.*, difficult, troublesome.

difficultas, -ātis, *f.*, difficulty, trouble.

difficulter, *adv.*, with difficulty.

diffīdo, diffisus, 3 *v. semi-dep. n.*, distrust (*with dat.*).

dignitas, -ātis, *f.*, rank, authority, greatness, prestige, position, honour.

dīgredior, -gressus, 3 *v. dep. n.*, separate, go away, depart.

dīlectus, -ūs, *m.*, levy, enlisting.

dīligentia, -ae, *f.*, care, carefulness.

dīligo, -lexi, -lectum, 3 *v. a.*, esteem, love, be devoted to.

dīmico, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, fight, struggle, contend.

dīmidius, -a, -um, *adj.*, half.

dīmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, send different ways, disperse; discharge, disband; let go, release; give up, abandon, forgo; *ex manibus dimitti*, to slip from their grasp, c. lxiv.

dīrimo, -ēmi, -emptum, 3 *v. a.*; separate, break off, interrupt.

dīripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3 *v. a.*, tear in pieces; ravage, plunder, loot.

discēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, disperse; leave, depart; abandon, give up, desert (*with* ab).

discepto, -avi, -atum, 1 *v. a.*, debate, discuss, decide.

discessus, -ūs, *m.*, departure.

dispergo, -si, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, scatter, disperse.

dispōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, set in different places; post, arrange, draw up, quarter (*troops*).

disputātio, -ōnis, *f.*, argument, debate.

disputo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, discuss, open a discussion.

dissensio, -ōnis, *f.*, difference of opinion, disagreement, discord; *civilis dissensio*, civil war, c. lxvii.

dissentio, -si, -sum, 4 *v. n.*, differ in opinion, disagree.

dissimulo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, conceal, keep secret, disguise.

dissipo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, scatter, disperse.

dissolvo, -solvi, -solūtum, 3 *v. a.*, unloose; pay.

disto, —, —, 1 *v. n.*, be separate, distant.

distraho, -traxi, -tractum, 3 *v. a.*, divide; frustrate, prevent.

distribuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, divide, distribute, separate.

disturbo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, throw into disorder, interrupt.

diū, *adv.*, for a long while; *comp.* diutius.

diūturnitas, -ātis, *f.*, length of time, long duration.

dīversus, -a, -um, *particip. of* diverto, turned different ways, facing in opposite directions, on two fronts; different, opposite.

dīvido, -si, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, separate, split.

dīvīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, religious.

dīvulgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, publish, make known.

do, dedi, datum, 1 *v. a.* (*inf.* dăre), give, grant, afford, furnish; *dare operam*, take measures, see to it; *dare fidem*, give a pledge, give security.

doceo, -ui, -tum, 2 *v. a.*, inform, point out, teach.

doleo, -ui, —, 2 *v. a. and n.*, regret, feel a grievance, express indignation.

dolor, -ōris, *m.*, pain, suffering; resentment, indignation.
domicilium, -i, *n.*, house, dwelling.
dominātus, -ūs, *m.*, sovereignty, mastery.
dominus, -i, *m.*, master.
domus, -ūs, *f.*, home, house.
dubito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v.n.*, hesitate, delay.
dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wavering, doubtful.
ducenti, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, two hundred
dūco, duxi, ductum, 3 *v. a.*, lead, command; construct; prolong.
ductus, -ūs, *m.*, command.
dum, *conj.*, while, so long as, until.
duo, -ae, -o, *card. num. adj.*, two.
duodecim, *card. num. adj.*, twelve.
duodecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, twelfth.
duplex, *gen.* -plicis, *adj.*, double, pairs of, twin.
durē, *adv.*, harshly; *comp.* durius.
duumviri, -orum, *pl. m.*, committee of two; chief magistrates of a municipium.
dux, ducis, *c.*, commander, general.

ē, *see* ex.
ēdīco, -dixi, -dictum, 3 *v. a.*, ordain, proclaim, publish an order.
ēditus, -a, -um, *particip. of* edo, elevated, high; *comp.* ēditior.
ēdūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3 *v. a.*, lead out, march out.
effero, efferre, extuli, ēlatum, *irreg. v. a.*, bring out, carry away; *laudibus efferre*, extol, praise.
efficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.*, make up, complete, create, carry out.
effugio, -fūgi, —, 3 *v. a. and n.*, escape.
ēgredior, -gressus, 3 *v. dep. a. and n.*, depart from, leave, march out.
ēicio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, expel.
ēligo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3 *v. a.*, pick out, choose.
ēludo, -si, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, elude, baffle, play with.
ēmineo, -ui, —, 2 *v. n.*, stand out, be conspicuous.
ēminus, *adv.*, at a distance.
ēmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, send out, let out.
enim, *conj.*, for.
eo, īvi *or* ii, itum, 4 *v. n.*, go.
eō, *adv.*, to that place, there (= thither); on that account.
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place.
eques, -itis, *m.*, horse-soldier, trooper; *pl.* cavalry; *pl.* the order of Equites, the capitalist class; *see* note, c. xvii.
equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to cavalry; of *or* belonging to the Equites Romani, Equestrian.
equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry.
equus, -i, *m.*, horse.
ergā, *prep. with acc.*, towards (*of feelings or conduct towards a person*).
ērigo, -rexi, -rectum, 3 *v. a.*, raise, build, construct.
ēripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3 *v. a.*, remove, take away, steal, rob.
ērumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3 *v. n.*, break out, break away.
ēruptio, -ōnis, *f.*, sortie, sally.
et, *conj.*, and; *et . . . et*, both . . . and.
etiam, *conj.*, and also, also, too, even.
etsī, *conj.*, although, though.
ēventus, -ūs, *m.*, issue, result, consequence.
ēvoco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v.a.*, summon; call out (*of troops*); *particip.* ēvocāti, veterans, reservists.
ex *or* **ē**, *prep. with abl.*, out of, from, of; directly after, after; according to, in accordance with; *utraque ex parte*, on either side, c. xlv; *ex itinere*, on, during the

march, c. xxiv; *e regione molis*, in a straight line with, over against, the breakwater, c. xxv.

exaedifico, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, build completely, build.

exaequo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, place on a level, regard as equal.

exagito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, attack violently, assail.

exaudio, -īvi, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, hear from a distance, catch the sound of.

excēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, go away, retire, withdraw, quit, leave, evacuate.

excelsus, -a, -um, *particip. of* excello, elevated, high; *superl.* excelsissimus.

excipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, except, omit; catch, capture; receive, sustain, meet; befall, overtake; follow, succeed, c. lxv, lxvi.

excito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. freq. a.*, rouse, move; raise, build, run up.

excūsātio, -ōnis, *f.*, excuse, plea.

exemplum, -i, *n.*, precedent, instance, case.

exeo, -ii, -itum, 4 *v. n.*, withdraw, leave, go out, march out.

exercitātus, -a, -um, *particip. of* exercito, trained, practised.

exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army.

exigo, -ēgi, -actum, 3 *v. a.*, drive out; demand, require, exact.

exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, scanty.

eximius,-a,-um,*adj.*,distinguished, conspicuous.

exinānio, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, empty, strip, impoverish.

existimātio, -ōnis, *f.*, reputation, character, credit.

existimo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, think, judge, consider.

exitus, -ūs, *m.*, departure, escape; entrance, outlet; conclusion, result.

expedio, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, extricate, disengage; make ready, prepare; set in order, set right, arrange.

expeditus, -a, -um, *particip. of* expedio, disengaged, unencumbered, free, light-armed, *see Introd. G*; convenient; *comp.* expeditior.

expello, -puli, -pulsum, 3 *v. a.*, drive out, banish, remove.

experior, -rtus, 4 *v. dep. a.*, attempt, undertake.

expeto, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 3 *v. a.*, try to obtain, seek for.

expio, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, atone for, avenge.

expleo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2 *v. a.*, fill up, occupy completely.

explicitus, -a, -um, *particip. of* explico, simple, easy (*lit.* disentangled); *comp.* explicitior.

explico, -āvi *and* -ui, -ātum *and* -itum, 1 *v. a.*, simplify, evolve, develop (*lit.* unfold, disentangle).

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, spy, scout.

explōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, search out, reconnoitre.

expōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, relate, explain; land, disembark.

exsisto, -stiti, -stitum, 3 *v. n.*, arise, spring up, start.

exspectātio, -ōnis, *f.*, anticipation, expectation; anxiety, suspense.

exspecto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, wait for, await; expect, anticipate, dread.

exstinguo, -nxi, -nctum, 3 *v. a.*, destroy, put a stop to, disprove.

exsto, —, —, 1 *v. n.*, stand out, show above water.

extĕrreo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, frighten, affright.

extorqueo, -torsi, -tortum, 2 *v. a.*, take forcibly, wrest away.

extrā, *prep. with acc.*, outside, beyond; *adv.*, outside.

extraho, -traxi, -tractum, 3 *v. a.*, drag out, waste (*of time*).

extraordinārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, unusual, unconstitutional.
extrēmus, -a, -um, *superl. adj.*, last, extreme, fundamental, indispensable; *extremum agmen, extremi*, the rear-guard, c. lxiv, lxxviii.

faber, -bri, *m.*, smith; engineer, sapper; *see Introd. G.*
facile, *adv.*, easily; *comp.* facilius.
facilis, -e, *adj.*, easy.
facio, fēci, factum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, do, make, carry out; act; *certiorem facere*, to inform; *iter facere*, to march; *proelia secunda facere*, to fight successful battles, win victories, c. vii; *potestatem facere*, to give an opportunity, chance, leave, c. xxii, xli; *iacturam facere*, to incur loss of, to sacrifice, c. xxxii; *pass.* fio, fieri, factus, be done, become, happen, take place.
factio, -ōnis, *f.*, party, clique, class.
factum, -i, *n.*, deed, act, conduct.
facultas, -ātis, *f.*, opportunity, chance, facility, means; abundance, plenty, supplies.
falso, *adv.*, falsely, untruly.
falsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, false, untrue.
fāma, -ae, *f.*, honour, credit, reputation, c. lxxxii; report, rumour.
familia, -ae, *f.*, household; private servants.
familiāris, -is, *m.*, familiar acquaintance, intimate friend.
fānum, -i, *n.*, temple, sanctuary.
fastīgium, -i, *n.*, peak, summit; chief point; declivity, slope.
fauces, -ium, *pl. f.*, mouth, entrance.
faveo, fāvi, fautum, 2 *v. n.*, favour, promote, be well disposed to (*with dat.*).
fēlīciter, *adv.*, successfully; *superl.* fēlīcissimē.
fera, -ae, *f.*, wild beast.
ferē, *adv.*, nearly, almost, usually, generally.
fero, ferre, tuli, lātum, 3 *irreg. a. and n.*, carry, bear, bring; put up with, endure, tolerate; reap, gain (*fructum, praemium*), c. lxxiv, lxxxvi; bring forward, propose (a motion), c. vi; carry (a motion), c. xxxii; offer, propose (*condiciones*), c. xxiv, xxxii; lead (of a road) *intrans.*, c. xxvii; *ut fert consuetudo*, as the custom is, as custom requires, c. li.
ferreus, -a, -um, *adj.*, iron; *manus ferrea*, a grappling-iron, c. lvii, lviii.
fides, -ei, *f.*, trust, confidence, faith, good faith, promise, pledge; *in fide esse alicuius*, to be under some one's protection, c. xxxiv.
fidūcia, -ae, *f.*, confidence, reliance.
fīlius, -i, *m.*, son.
fingo, finxi, fictum, 3 *v. a.*, invent, feign, pretend.
fīnis, -is, *m.*, end, limit; *pl.* borders, frontiers; territory.
fīnitimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, neighbouring, adjoining.
fio, fieri, factus, *v. semi-dep. n. pass. of* facio, be done, become, happen, take place.
firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, stable, secure, valid, certain.
flāgito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. freq. a.*, entreat earnestly, importune, demand.
fleo, flēvi, flētum, 2 *v. n.*, weep.
fluctus, -ūs, *m.*, wave.
flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river, stream, current.
fore, *fut. inf. of* sum.
fortis, -e, *adj.*, brave; *superl.* fortissimus.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely; *superl.* fortissimē.
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, chance, luck.
forum, -i, *n.*, forum, market-place.
fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch, trench.

frequens, *gen.* frequentis, *adj.*, crowded, in large numbers; frequent, numerous.
fretum, -i, *n.*, channel, strait; *esp.* the Straits of Messina, c. xxix.
frons, -ntis, *f.*, front, face (*lit.* forehead).
fructus, -ūs, *m.*, reward, fruit.
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to corn; *res frumentaria*, supplies, provisions.
frūmentor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. n.*, forage.
frūmentum, -i, *n.*, corn, supplies; *pl.*, corn in the blade, c. xlviii.
frustrā, *adv.*, uselessly, in vain, to no purpose, without effect.
fuga, -ae, *f.*, escape, flight, rout.
fugio, -gi, -gitum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, fly, escape; avoid; escape the notice of; *fugiens laboris*, averse from labour, indolent.
funda, -ae, *f.*, sling.
funditor, -ōris, *m.*, slinger.
futūrus, -a, -um, *particip. of* sum, future.

genus, -eris, *n.*, kind, method, style; class, rank.
gero, gessi, gestum, 3 *v. a.*, bear, carry, manage, conduct, do; *rem gerere*, to fight.
gladiātor, -ōris, *m.*, gladiator, *see note*, c. xiv.
gladius, -i, *m.*, sword.
glōrior, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a. and n.*, boast.
grātia, -ae, *f.*, favour, esteem, regard, influence, gratitude; *gratias agere, gratiam referre*, to express gratitude, to return thanks; *cum aliquo in gratiam redire*, to reconcile oneself with some one, c. iv.
grātulātio, -ōnis, *f.*, congratulation.
grātulor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a. and n.*, congratulate.
gravis, -e, *adj.*, serious, weighty, extreme, harsh.
gravitas, -ātis, *f.*, weight, heaviness.
graviter, harshly, seriously, severely.
gravor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. n.*, feel vexed, be annoyed, object.
gubernātor, -ōris, *m.*, steersman, pilot.

habeo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, have, hold, possess; consider, esteem; *rationem habere*, to take account of, take thought for, make allowance for, c. ix, xiii, xx, xxxii; *male habere*, to harass, annoy, c. lxiii, lxxxi; *eodem loco habere*, to make no distinction between, c. xxxiii; *iter habere*, to make one's way, travel, c. xiv, li; *circuitum habere*, to involve a détour, c. lxiii.
hāc, *adv.*, this way, on this side.
harpago, -ōnis, *m.*, boat-hook, grappling-iron.
hastātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, armed with a spear; *as subst.*, prīmus, secundus, &c., hastātus (*sc.* ordo); the first, second, &c., company of hastāti, see *Introd. G* and c. xlvi, note.
hībernus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of winter, wintry; *n. pl.* hiberna (*sc.* castra), winter quarters, a winter encampment.
hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.*, this.
hiemo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, winter, pass the winter.
hiems, -emis, *f.*, winter.
hinc, *adv.*, hence, from this side, on this side; out of this space, c. lxxxii.
homo, -inis, *c.*, human being, man.
honestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, respectable, held in esteem; honourable; *superl.* honestissimus.
honos *or* **honor,** -ōris, *m.*, honour, position, distinction, office; *magno*

in honore habere, to esteem very highly, treat with conspicuous favour.

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.

hortor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a.*, urge, encourage, cheer on, exhort.

hospes, -itis, *m.*, friend; host; guest.

hostis, -is, *c.*, enemy.

HS lx, *abbreviation for* sestertium sexagies. *See note*, c. xxiii.

huc, *adv.*, hither, to this spot; c. lvi = *ad has*, to these.

hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, human, secular; kind, polite.

humilitas, -ātis, *f.*, humiliation, submission.

iacio, iēci, iactum, 3 *v. a.*, hurl, throw; throw up, throw out, build.

iactūra, -ae, *f.*, loss, sacrifice.

iam, *adv.*, already, now; *iam iamque*, at that very moment; *iam pridem*, this long time, now for a long time.

Iānuārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, January.

ibi, *adv.*, there; c. xxvi = *in eis*, on them.

idcirco, *adv.*, on that account.

īdem, eadem, idem, *dem. pron.*, the same.

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable.

Īdūs, -uum, *pl. f.*, the Ides, the 15th day of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th day of the other months.

igitur, *conj.*, therefore, so.

ignōminia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, degradation.

ignōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, not to know, be unacquainted with, be ignorant of.

ille, illa, illud, *dem. pron.*, that; he; illi *very often* = the enemy.

immineo, —, —, 2 *v. n.*, threaten, menace; be imminent.

impar, *gen.* imparis, *adj.*, unequal.

imparātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unprepared; *superl.* imparātissimus.

impedīmentum, -i, *n.*, hindrance; *pl.*, baggage; pack-horses.

impedio, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, hinder, detain, obstruct, block; veto, forbid.

impedītus, -a, -um, *particip. of* impedio, fraught with hindrances, intricate, precarious.

impello, -puli, -pulsum, 3 *v. a.*, move, influence, stimulate; urge, drive forward.

imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, general, commander-in-chief.

imperātum, -i, *n.*, order, command.

imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unsuspecting, simple-minded, without experience.

imperium, -i, *n.*, government, authority, official authority, military command; *imperia*, c. xxxi (*abstract for concrete*), official authorities, governors.

impero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, *with dat. of person*, order, command; commandeer, requisition.

impetro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, obtain leave for, obtain by entreaty, procure.

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, charge, attack.

implōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, entreat, appeal to.

impōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, put on board, embark; put upon.

imprīmīs, *adv.*, chiefly, especially.

improbo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, disapprove.

imprōvīso, *adv.*, unexpectedly.

imprūdens, *gen.* -entis, *adj.*, unexpecting, off one's guard, unprepared.

in, *prep. with acc.*, to, into, towards, against; *in hiemem*, until

winter, c. lxi; *in dies*, from day to day, every day, c. lii; *prep. with abl.*, in, at, on, upon, in the case of.

inaedifico, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, block, barricade, wall up; build.

inaequo, —, —, 1 *v. a*, level.

incendium, -i, *n.*, burning, fire, conflagration.

incido, -cidi, -cāsum, 3 *v. n.*, fall in with, meet with.

incipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, begin.

incito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, encourage, arouse, excite, fire; *incitati cursu*, at full speed, at the double, c. lxxix.

inclīno, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, change, turn; incline.

incolo, -colui, —, 3 *v. a. and n.*, inhabit.

incolumis, -e, *adj.*, safe, uninjured.

incommodum, -i, *n.*, misfortune, trouble; unfavourable terms, penalty.

inconsultē, *adv.*, unadvisedly, rashly; *comp.* inconsultius.

incursus, -ūs, *m.*, charge, attack; advance, entrance.

inde, *adv.*, thence, after that.

indūtiae, -arum, *pl. f.*, truce, armistice.

ineo, -īvi *or* -ii, -itum, 4 *v. a. and n.*, enter upon, form, begin.

inermis, -e, *adj.*, unarmed, without weapons, defenceless.

infāmia, -ae, *f.*, discredit, disgrace, scandal.

infectus, -a, -um, *adj.*, undone, unfinished.

inferior, -us, *comp. adj.*, lower; inferior, weaker.

infero, intuli, illātum, *irreg. v. a.*, bring in; *bellum inferre*, to begin war, commence hostilities; *signa inferre*, to advance to the attack.

infimus, -a, -um, *superl. adj.*, lowest; *infimus collis*, the foot of the hill.

infirmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, feeble, weak-kneed; *comp.* infirmior.

infrā, *adv.*, below; *prep. with acc.*, below.

ingravesco, —, —, 3 *v. incep. n.*, increase, become a more serious difficulty.

ingredior, -gressus, 3 *v. dep. a. and n.*, enter upon, begin.

ingressus, -ūs, *m.*, movement, advance.

inicio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, cast, throw; throw on board.

inimīcitia, -ae, *f.* (*used mostly in plural*), unfriendliness, dislike, hostility.

inimīcus, -i, *m.*, opponent, personal enemy.

inīquitas, -ātis, *f.*, disadvantage.

inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unfair, unjust; disadvantageous, unfavourable, difficult.

initium, -i, *n.*, beginning.

iniungo, -nxi, -nctum, 3 *v. a.*, bring upon, fasten upon, impose upon.

iniūria, -ae, *f*, wrong, outrage, affront, attack.

inopia, -ae, *f.*, lack, scarcity, want of supplies.

inopīnans, *gen.* -antis, *adj.*, not expecting, off one's guard.

insequor, -secutus, 3 *v. dep. a. and n.*, follow, pursue.

insolenter, *adv.*, recklessly, audaciously.

insolentia, -ae, *f.*, arrogance, audacity.

instituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, set up, establish; begin, start, organize.

insto, -stiti, -stātum, 1 *v. n.*, approach, press forward, threaten.

instruo, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a*, furnish, supply, equip; (*of troops*) draw up, form.

insuētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unused, unaccustomed, inexperienced;

with gen., c. xliv; *with* ad *and acc.*, c. lxxviii.

insula, -ae, *f.*, island.

integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, fresh; untouched, unpillaged; *superl.* integerrimus, *see note*, c. lxxxv.

intego, -texi, -tectum, 3 *v. a.*, cover.

intellego, -exi, -ectum, 3 *v. a.*, perceive, understand, see, observe.

inter, *prep. with acc.*, among, between, during; *inter se*, among themselves, with one another, c. xx, xl. 2; from each other, c. xl. 1.

intercēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, come between, lie between; occur, come to pass; *of time*, intervene, pass; *of the tribunes of the people*, intervene, interpose a veto (*with dat.*).

intercessio, -ōnis, *f.*, *of the tribunes of the people*, intervention, veto.

intercipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 *v. a.*, cut off, head off.

intercludo, -clūsi, -clūsum, 3 *v. a.*, cut off, head off; surround, shut in.

interdiu, *adv.*, in the daytime.

intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.

intereo, -ii, -itum, 4 *v. n.*, be lost, be killed.

interest, -esse, -fuit, *v. impers.*, it is of importance, it is of advantage to (*with gen.*).

interficio, -feci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.*, kill, put to death.

intericio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, place among, mix, add to.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.

intermitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, discontinue; leave between, leave free, leave unoccupied; let pass.

internuntius, -i, *m.*, messenger, envoy.

interpello, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, interrupt.

interpōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, introduce, interpose; *fidem interponere*, give a pledge, c. lxxxvi.

interrogo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, question,

interrumpo, -rupi, -ruptum, 3 *v. a.*, break down, wreck; break off, stop.

intersum, *see* interest.

intervallum, -i, *n.*, interval, distance.

intra, *prep. with acc.*, within, inside; *adv.*, within.

intro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, penetrate, force a way into.

intrōdūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3 *v. a.*, bring in, introduce, bring forward.

introitus, -us, *m.*, entrance.

invādo, -si, -sum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, attack; break out, arise.

invenio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 *v. a.*, find, discover.

īnveterasco, -ravi, —, 3 *v. incep. n.*, continue long, be long stationed.

invidia, -ae, *f.*, jealousy, ill-will.

invīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, invite, entertain.

invītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unwilling, against one's will.

involvo, -volvi, -volūtum, 3 *v. a.*, wrap.

ipse, -sa, -sum, *dem. pron.*, he, he himself.

īrācundia, -ae, *f.*, anger, passion, resentment.

īrascor, īrātus, 3 *v. dep. n.*, be angry, enraged.

irrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, break into, rush into.

is, ea, id, *dem. pron.*, he, that; of this kind.

ita, *adv.*, so, thus, as follows.

itaque, *adv.*, and so, therefore, accordingly.

item, *adv.*, also, in the same way, moreover.

iter, itineris, *n.*, journey, road, route, march; *iustum iter*, a regular day's march; *magnum iter*, a forced march.

iubeo, iussi, iussum, 2 *v. a.*, order, bid, command.

iūcundus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasant, agreeable.

iūdicium,-i, *n.*, judgement, opinion; trial, prosecution; *non sui iudici esse*, not to be for them to decide; *see note*, c. xiii.

iūdico, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, decide, conclude.

iūgerum, -i, *n.*, juger, *a strip of land measuring* 80 × 40 *yards*; *about* $\frac{2}{3}$ *of an acre.*

iugum, -i, *n.*, collar, yoke; hill-side, hill.

iūmentum, -i, *n.*, packhorse, mule.

iungo, -nxi, -nctum, 3 *v. a.*, join, fasten, link together.

iūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, swear, take an oath.

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, law, justice; *ius iurandum*, an oath.

iustitia, -ae, *f.*, justice.

iustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, righteous, just, legitimate; *iustum iter*, a regular day's march, about fifteen miles.

iuvo, iūvi, iūtum, 1 *v. a.*, help, support.

iuxtā, *prep. with acc.*, close to; *adv.*, hard by.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, work, exertion, effort.

labōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, be in difficulties, be in distress; take pains, strive.

lacesso, -īvi, -ītum, 3 *v. a.*, provoke, challenge, annoy, exasperate, attack.

laetitia, -ae, *f.*, joyfulness, rejoicing.

laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, glad, delighted.

languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dull, faint, indifferent.

largitio, -ōnis, bribery, prodigality, generosity.

lātitūdo, -inis, *f.*, breadth, width.

lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, broad, wide; *comp.* lātior.

lătus, -eris, *n.*, side, flank.

laudo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, praise, commend.

laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, credit, esteem, glory.

lēgātio, -ōnis, *f.*, embassy.

lēgātus, -i, *m.*, envoy, ambassador; staff-officer; *see Introd. G.*

legio, -ōnis, *f.*, legion, *the unit of Roman army organization*; *see Introd. G.*

legionārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to a legion; *used as noun*, soldier in a legion, legionary.

lēgitimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, lawful, right, legal.

lēnis, -e, *adj.*, mild, moderate, conciliatory; *comp.* lenior, *superl.* lenissimus.

lēnitas, -ātis, *f.*, clemency.

lēniter, *adv.*, moderately, *comp.* lenius.

lentē, *adv.*, slowly, leisurely.

lĕvis, -e, *adj.*, light.

levo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, lighten, relieve, mitigate.

lex, lēgis, *f.*, law.

libens, *gen.* -entis, *adj.*, ready, glad, delighted; *superl.* libentissimus.

liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free, unrestricted.

lĭber, -bri, *m.*, book.

līberē, *adv.*, freely, unrestrictedly.

līberi, -ōrum, *pl. m.*, children.

lībero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, set free, release.

lībertas, -ātis, *f.*, freedom, liberty.

lībertus, -i, *m.*, freedman, emancipated slave.
licentia, -ae, *f.*, unrestrained freedom.
licet, licuit *or* licitum est, 2 *v. impers.*, it is allowed, lawful, possible.
lictor, -ōris, *m.*, lictor, *an official attendant of a magistrate.*
ligna, -ōrum, *pl. n.*, wood, fuel.
linter, -tris, *f.*, boat, skiff, punt.
litterae, -ārum, *pl. f.*, dispatch, letter.
lītus, -oris, *n.*, shore, beach.
locus, -i, *m.* (*pl. m. and n.*), place, spot, ground, district, neighbourhood; position, grade; *eodem loco habere,* to make no distinction between, c. xxxiii; *locus misericordiae,* room for pity, c. lxxxiv; *loco* (*obsidis, argumenti, &c.*), in the place of, instead of, for, as.
longē, *adv.*, far, far off; greatly; *comp.* longius, further, further away.
longinquitas, -ātis, *f.*, length, extent, distance.
longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, distant; *comp.* longinquior.
longitūdo, -inis, *f.*, length.
longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long; tedious; *navis longa,* warship, man-of-war.
loquor, locūtus, 3 *v. dep. a. and n.*, say, speak.
lūceo, luxi, —, 2 *v. n.*, shine; *impers.*, dawn, become light.
lūdus, -i, *m.*, game; school (*of gladiators*), *see note*, c. xiv.
lux, lūcis, *f.*, light; *prima luce,* at dawn.

magis, *comp. adv.*, more, the more; *see* magnopere.
magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magistrate, public official; magisterial office, magistracy.
magnitūdo, -inis, *f.*, greatness, size, extent, amount, quantity.
magnoperē, *adv.*, greatly; *comp.* magis; *superl.* maxime.
magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great, large; vigorous, impetuous (*impetus*); strong (*opera*); *magna itinera,* forced marches; *comp.* maior; *superl.* maximus.
male, *adv.*, badly; *male habere,* to harass, annoy, c. lxiii, lxxxi.
maleficium, -i, *n.*, misdeed, harm, injurious action.
mālo, malle, malui, —, *v. irreg. a. and n.*, prefer, choose.
malum, -i, *n.*, evil, calamity, difficulty.
mandātum, -i, *n.*, order, command, instructions, message.
mando, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, order, command, charge.
maneo, mansi, mansum, 2 *v. a. and n.*, stay, remain, continue; await.
manipulus, -i, *m.*, handful, bundle; (*of soldiers*), maniple, company, *see Introd. G.*
manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand; *manus ferrea,* grappling-iron, c. lvii, lviii; *manum* or *manus conserere,* to join battle.
mare, -is, *n.*, sea.
māteria, -ae, *f.*, timber.
mātūrē, *adv.*, early, soon; *comp.* maturius.
mātūritas, -ātis, *f.*, ripeness.
mātūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, hasten, expedite.
maximē, *superl. adv.*, chiefly, very greatly; *see* magnopere.
maximus, *see* magnus.
medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle; *in medio colle*, half-way up the hill.
memor, *gen.* memoris, *adj.*, mindful (*with gen.*).
memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory, recollection.
mendācium, -i, *n.*, falsehood, breach of faith.
mens, mentis, *f.*, mind, reasoning faculties, reason, attention.
mensis, -is, *m.*, month.

mereor, -itus, 2 *v. dep. a. and n.*, deserve, merit; *bene mereri de*, to deserve well of.
merx, -cis, *f.* (*used mostly in plural*), stores, provisions, supplies.
metus, -ūs, *m.*, fear, dread, panic.
mīles, -itis, *m.*, soldier.
mīlia, -ium, *pl. n.*, thousands; miles (*sc.* passuum). *The singular* mille *is indeclinable and usually an adjective.*
mīlitāris, -e, *adj.*, of soldiers, military; *res militaris*, the art of war, warfare.
minae, -ārum, *pl. f.*, threats.
minimus, *see* parvus.
minor, *see* parvus.
minuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, lessen, diminish.
minus, *comp. adv.*, less, the less; *pos.* paulum *or* paulo; *superl.* minime.
miserātio, -ōnis, *f.*, pity, compassion; pathetic speech.
misericordia, -ae, *f.*, pity, compassion.
missio, -ōnis, *f.*, discharge.
mitto, mīsi, missum, 3 *v. a.*, send, dispatch; dismiss, break up; announce, report, utter; throw, hurl; *signa mittere*, to show signs, give proofs.
modius, -i, *m.*, modius, *a Roman dry measure, equivalent to about one peck.*
modo, *adv.*, only, just; just now.
modus, -i, *m.*, measure, limit; way, manner, kind.
moenia, -ium, *pl. n.*, city walls, fortifications.
mōles, -is, *f.*, massive structure, pier, breakwater.
mōmentum, -i, *n.*, movement, circumstance, accident, influence.
moneo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, advise, warn.
mons, -ntis, *m.*, mountain, hill, high ground.
montānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to a mountain, dwelling in the mountains; *pl. as subst.*, mountaineers.
montuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, mountainous.
mora, -ae, *f.*, delay, hindrance.
moror, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a. and n.*, wait, stay, delay, hinder, harass.
mos, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom, way; *pl.* habits, character.
moveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2 *v. a.*, move, influence, persuade; *castra movere*, to strike camp.
multitūdo, -inis, *f.*, crowd, large numbers; superior numbers.
multō, *adv.*, by far, much.
multum, *adv.*, much, very, exceedingly.
multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, many; *comp.* plūs, *pl.* plūres; *superl.* plūrimus.
mūniceps, -ipis, *c.*, inhabitant of a *municipium*, townsman; fellow townsman.
mūnicipium, -i, *n.*, municipal town; *see Introd. F.*
mūnio, -īvi, -ītum, 4 *v. a.*, fortify, guard, secure, protect.
mūnitio, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification, defence, protection, wall, entrenchment.
mūnītus, -a, -um, *particip. of* munio, defended, fortified; *superl.* munitissimus.
mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty, service.
mūrus, -i, *m.*, wall.
mūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, alter, change.
mūtuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, borrowed, lent; *mutuas pecunias sumere ab aliquo*, to borrow money of any one.

nanciscor, nactus *or* nanctus, 3 *v. dep. a.*, obtain, gain, find, reach.
nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature, character.
nāvigium, -i, *n.*, vessel, boat.
nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship; *navis oneraria*.

merchant vessel; *navis longa*, warship; *navis actuaria*, swift vessel, transport; *navis tecta*, decked vessel; *navibus iunctis pons*, bridge of boats.

nē, *conj.*, in order that not, lest, to prevent; adv. *ne . . . quidem*, not even.

-nĕ, *interrog. enclitic particle*, whether.

nec, *see* neque.

necessārio, *adv.*, unavoidably, of necessity.

necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, necessary, inevitable, needful, requisite.

necessārius, -i, *m.*, relative, kinsman; friend.

necesse, *neut. adj.*, necessary, inevitable.

necessitūdo, -inis, *f.*, relationship, friendship; need, necessity.

nefāriē, *adv.*, wrongfully, criminally.

nego, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, say not, deny, refuse.

negōtium, -i, *n.*, business, matter; difficulty, trouble.

nēmo, *acc.* nēminem, *gen.* nullius, *c.*, no one, nobody.

neque *or* **nec**, *conj.*, and not; *neque . . . neque*, neither . . . nor.

nequedum, *conj.*, and not yet.

nequiquam, *adv.*, in vain.

neu *or* **nēve**, *conj.*, nor, and not; *neu . . . neu*, in order that not, lest . . . or.

neuter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, neither.

nihil, *indeclin. n.*, nothing.

nimius, -a, -um, *adj.*, excessive.

nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless, except.

nītor, nīsus *or* **nixus**, 3 *v. dep. n.*, strive, struggle, fight on.

nix, nivis, *f.*, snow.

nōbilis, -e, *adj.*, noble, of good birth; well-known; *superl.* nobilissimus.

noceo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. n.*, hurt, damage, injure (*with dat.*).

noctū, *adv.*, by night.

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, in the night.

nōlo, nolle, nōlui, *v. irreg. a. and n.*, not wish, be unwilling.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name.

nōminātim, *adv.*, by name, individually.

non, *adv.*, not; *non nullus*, some; *non numquam*, sometimes.

nondum, *adv.*, not yet.

nongenti, *card. num. adj.*, nine hundred.

nōnus, *ord. num. adj.*, ninth.

nosco, nōvi, nōtum, 3 *v. incep. a.*, learn; *novi*, I know.

noster, -tra, -trum, *poss. pron.*, our.

nōtitia, -ae, *f.*, acquaintance, knowledge.

noto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, mark; censure.

nōtus, -a, -um, *particip. of* nosco, known; *as subst.*, acquaintance, friend.

novem, *card. num. adj.*, nine.

novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, recent, novel, strange; *superl.* novissimus, last; *novissimum agmen*, *novissimi*, rear-guard.

nox, -ctis, *f.*, night.

nūdo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, strip, deprive.

nullus, -a, -um, *adj.*, not any, no; *non nullus*, some.

numerus, -i, *m.*, number.

numquam, *adv.*, never; *non numquam*, sometimes.

nunc, *adv.*, now.

nuncupo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, pronounce publicly, offer (*vows*); *lit.* call by name.

nuntio, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, send news, report, announce, command.

nuntius, -i, *m.*, messenger, courier; message, report.

obicio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, expose, throw in the way of, oppose.

oblātus, *see* offero.

oblīquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, slanting, on the flank.
obscūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unknown, unfamiliar; *comp.* obscūrior.
obsecro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, entreat, implore.
obses, -idis, *c.*, hostage.
obsideo, -ēdi, -essum, 2 *v. a.*, hem in, beset, besiege, invest, blockade.
obsidio, -ōnis, *f.*, siege, investment, blockade.
obstringo, -strinxi, -strictum, 3 *v. a.*, bind, lay under an obligation.
obstruo, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, block up.
obtempero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, comply with, submit to, defer to (*with dat.*).
obtineo, -tinui, -tentum, 2 *v. a.*, hold, occupy, retain; have as one's province, be governor of; *rem obtinere*, to gain one's object, conquer, win the victory, c. lxxii.
obtrectātio, -ōnis, *f.*, disparagement, depreciation.
obvenio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 *v. n.*, fall to one's lot (*with dat.*).
obviam, *adv.*, in the way; *obviam exire alicui*, to go out to meet some one.
occasio, -ōnis, *f.*, opportunity, favourable moment, chance.
occasus, -ūs, *m.*, going down, setting.
occultē, *adv.*, privately, secretly.
occultus, -a, -um, *particip. of* occulo, secret, stealthy; *in occulto*, secretly.
occupātus, -a, -um, *particip. of* occupo, busy, engaged, employed.
occupo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, seize, take possession of, occupy (in a military sense).
occurro, -curri, -cursum, 3 *v. n. with dat.*, hasten to meet; attack.
Ōceanus, -i, *m.*, Atlantic Ocean.
octāvus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, eighth.
octōgintā, *card. num. adj.*, eighty.
oculus, -i, *m.*, eye.
offero, offerre, obtuli, oblātum, *irreg. v. a.*, throw in one's way, offer; impart, cause.
officīna, -ae, *f.*, manufactory, arsenal.
officium, -i, *n.*, service, favour; obligation, duty, allegiance; business, occupation; jurisdiction, administration.
omitto, -misi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, abandon, give up.
omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether, entirely.
omnis, -e, *adj.*, every, all, the whole of.
onerārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit for cargo; *navis oneraria*, a merchant vessel.
onus, -eris, *n.*, weight, heavy load, pack, baggage; annoyance, difficulty, encumbrance; *sub onere*, in heavy marching order.
opem, *no nom.*; *gen.* opis, *f.*, help, aid; *pl.* resources, power.
opera, -ae, *f.*, work, exertion, service; zeal, care, attention; *dare operam*, give attention, take measures.
opīnio, -ōnis, *f.*, expectation, opinion, impression, assumption, conclusion.
oportet, -uit, 2 *v. impers.* (one) ought, it is best.
oppidāni, -ōrum, *pl. m.*, townsfolk, citizens.
oppidum, -i, *n.*, town, stronghold.
oppōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, set against, set opposite, place in the path.
opportūnitas, -ātis, *f.*, convenience, suitability, advantage; opportunity.
opprimo, -pressi, -pressum, 3 *v. a.*, suppress, crush, overpower, subdue.
oppugnātio, -ōnis, *f.*, assault, siege operations.
optimē, *see* bene.

optimus, *see* bonus.

opus, -eris, *n.*, work, labour; action; fortification, siege-works.

ōrātio, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, address.

ordo, -inis, *m.*, order, discipline; class, order (*of citizens*); military command, post of centurion; rank, company, century (*of soldiers*).

orior, ortus, 4 *v. dep. n.*, arise, start, originate.

ōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, beg, beseech.

ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth, lips.

ostendo, -di, -sum *or* -tum, 3 *v. a.*, show, make known, declare.

ostentātio, -ōnis, *f.*, pride, boastfulness.

ōtium, -i, *n.*, peace; leisure.

pābulātio, -ōnis, *f.*, foraging.

pābulātor, -ōris, *m.*, forager.

pābulor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. n.*, forage, get fodder.

pābulum, -i, *n.*, fodder.

pāco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, pacify, subdue.

paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost.

palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.

palūdātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dressed in a general's cloak, in full-dress uniform.

pār, *gen.* paris, *adj.*, equal, like, similar.

parātus, -a, -um, *particip. of* paro, ready, prepared, determined; *comp.* parātior; *superl.* parātissimus.

parco, peperci, parsum, 3 *v. n. with dat.*, spare.

parens, -entis, *c.*, father, parent.

paro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, prepare, procure, provide, get ready.

pars, -rtis, *f.*, part, portion, share; direction, side; district, quarter; duty, c. xvii; attitude, tone, rôle, c. lxxxv; *minima pars temporis*, a moment, c. lxx; *magna pars*, the greater part, the bulk, c. xxv, xxvi; *duae partes*, two thirds, c. lxxxii; *in utramque partem*, on both sides, c. lxxxvi; *pro rata parte*, in proportion, c. xvii.

partior, -ītus, 4 *v. dep. a.*, share, divide.

parum, *adv.*, too little, insufficiently.

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small; *comp.* minor; *superl.* minimus.

passus, -ūs, *m.*, a pace, *equal to five Roman feet* (4 English ft., 10¼ in.); *one* passus *was equivalent to two regulation steps in quick time—to the distance, that is, from the point at which a soldier's heel was raised to the point at which the same heel was put down again*; *mille passus* or *passuum* (*pl. milia passuum*), a Roman mile (about 1618 yds.).

pastor, -ōris, *m.*, herdsman, shepherd.

pateo, -ui, —, 2 *v. n.*, be open, lie open, extend.

pater, -tris, *m.*, father.

patienter, *adv.*, patiently.

patientia, -ae, *f.*, patience, endurance, forbearance.

patior, passus, 3 *v. dep. a.*, allow, permit; endure, suffer.

patrōnus, -i, *m.*, patron, protector (*of individuals, cities, or entire provinces*).

pauci, -ae, -a, *pl. adj.*, few.

paulātim, *adv.*, gradually.

paulisper, *adv.*, a little while.

paulō, *adv.*, a little, slightly.

paulum, -i, *n.*, a little; *paulum frumenti*, a small amount of supplies, lxxviii.

paulum, *adv.*, somewhat, for a short distance.

pax, pācis, *f.*, peace.

pectus, -oris, *n.*, breast, chest.

pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money, funds.

pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, herd.

pedes, -itis, *m.*, an unmounted soldier; *pl.* foot, infantry.

penes, *prep. with acc.*, in the possession of, under the protection of.
per, *prep. with acc.*, through, along, over; by means of, by the agency of; by; during; *per se*, by himself, c. xxxii; of itself, c. lxvii.
peragito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, harass.
perago, -egi, -actum, 3 *v. a.*, finish.
percurro, -cucurri *or* -curri, -cursum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, traverse, overrun.
perequito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, ride through, ride up and down.
perfero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *irreg. v. a.*, convey, carry.
perficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.*, complete, finish; construct, execute.
perfugio, -fūgi, —, 3 *v. n.*, desert.
pergrātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, very agreeable, very pleasant.
perīclitor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a. and n.*, tempt, make trial of, endanger; be endangered.
perīculum, -i, *n.*, danger, peril, risk.
perītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, skilful, experienced; skilled in, acquainted with, familiar with (*with gen.*).
perlego, -lēgi, -lectum, 3 *v. a.*, read through, read to the end.
permaneo, -mansi, -mansum, 2 *v. n.*, hold out, last, continue.
permisceo, -miscui, -mistum *and* -mixtum, 2 *v. a.*, confuse, disturb, throw into confusion.
permitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, give, grant, entrust, allow.
permoveo, -mōvi, -mōtum, 2 *v. a.*, influence, persuade, provoke, alarm.
pernicies, -ēi, *f.*, ruin, destruction.
perniciōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, destructive, pernicious, ruinous.
perpetior, -pessus, 3 *v. dep. a.*, bear steadfastly, patiently.
perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous.
perrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, break through, crash through.
perscrībo, -scripsi, -scriptum, 3 *v. a.*, write down, enter, register; write a full account of, describe by letter.
persevēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, persist, persevere.
perspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3 *v. a.*, expect, examine, reconnoitre.
persuādeo, -suāsi, -suāsum, 2 *v. a. and n.*, persuade, convince (*with dat. of person*).
perterreo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, frighten thoroughly.
pertinācia, -ae, *f.*, obstinacy.
pertineo, -ui, —, 2 *v. n.*, tend, extend, stretch.
perturbo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, disturb, throw into confusion, alarm.
pervenio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 *v. n.*, come, reach, arrive; fall to, belong to, c. xxvi.
pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot (*of a man*); foot (*measure*); *pedem referre*, draw back, give way, retreat.
petitio, -ōnis, *f.*, candidature, canvass.
peto, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 3 *v. a.*, aim at, make for, attack; demand, require, entreat.
pignus, -oris, *n.*, security, pledge.
pīlum, -i, *n.*, javelin; *see Introd. G.*
pīlus, -i, *m.*, a maniple of the triarii in the Roman army. *See Introd. G, and note*, c. xiii.
plānities, -ēi, *f.*, plain, level ground.
platēa, -ae, *f.*, square, thoroughfare, street.
plebs, -bis, *f.*, people, populace, common people.
plēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, full (*with gen. or abl.*); *comp.* plēnior, ex-

aggerated, highly embellished, c. liii.

plērīque, -raeque, -raque, *pl. adj.*, very many, the majority.

plērumque, *adv.*, commonly, very frequently.

plūrimum, *superl. adv.*, especially.

plūrimus, -a, -um, *superl. adj.*, greatest; *pl.* most, very many; *posit.* multus; *comp.* plus *n.*; *pl.* plures.

plūs, plūris, *comp. n. subst. and adv.*, more; *pl.* plures, -ra, more, several, many.

pluteus, -i, *m.*, breastwork, parapet; mantlet.

polleo, —, —, 2 *v. n.*, be strong, powerful, influential.

polliceor, -itus, 2 *v. dep. a. and n.*, promise.

pollicitātio, -ōnis, *f.*, promise.

pōno, posui, positum, 3 *v. a.*, place, post, station, put in position; *pass.*, be dependent on, lie in, c. lxx; *particip.* positus, situated, c. xlv, lxi.

pons, -ntis, *m.*, bridge.

pontifex, -icis, *m.*, Roman high-priest, pontiff; *see Introd. F.*

populus, -i, *m.*, people, state, Roman people.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate.

porto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, carry, bear.

portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbour, port.

possessio, -ōnis, *f.*, estate, property, holding.

possum, posse, potui, *v. irreg. n.*, be able.

post, *prep. with acc.*, behind, after; *adv.* afterwards; *superl.* postremo, finally.

posteā, *adv.*, afterwards.

posteritas, -ātis, *f.*, future, time to come; posterity.

posterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, following, next; *in posterum* (*tempus*), for the future.

postrēmo, *see* post.

postridiē, *adv.*, on the following day.

postulāta, -ōrum, *pl. n.*, demands, requests.

postulo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, ask, claim, request.

potens, *gen.* -entis; *adj.*, powerful, influential.

potentia, -ae, *f.*, power, authority, influence.

potestas, -ātis, *f.*, power, authority, control, opportunity; *potestatem facere*, to give leave, permission, opportunity, chance.

potior, -us, *comp. adj.*, of more importance, preferable; *posit.* potis.

potior, -ītus, 4 *v. dep. n. with gen. or abl.*, become master of, take possession of, get, obtain.

potius, *comp. adv.*, rather; *potius quam*, rather than.

praeacūtus, -a, -um, *particip. of* praeacuo, sharpened to a point, pointed.

praebeo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, furnish, afford, offer.

praeda, -ae, *f.*, plunder, booty.

praedico, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, make publicly known, declare, denounce.

praedūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3 *v. a.*, draw, carry, construct (*a trench or wall*).

praefectūra, -ae, *f.*, prefecture, *an Italian city governed by Roman authorities*; *see Introd. F.*

praefectus, -i, *m.*, officer, commander (*especially of cavalry*); *praefectus fabrum*, colonel of engineers, superintendent of military engines.

praefero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *irreg. v. a.*, carry in front; express, exhibit, manifest, convey (*an impression*).

praeficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.*,

put in command of, appoint to command.

praemitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, send on, send forward, dispatch.

praemium, -i, *n.*, reward, recompense, boon; bribe.

praeruptus, -a, -um, *particip. of* praerumpo, steep, broken.

praesaepio, -psi, -ptum, 4 *v. a.*, fence off, block, barricade.

praescriptum, -i, *n.*, order, instructions.

praesens, *gen.* -sentis, *adj.*, present; immediate, c. xxix, lxxvi.

praesentia, -ae, *f.*, presence, present time; *in praesentiā*, for the moment, under present circumstances, c. vi, xxx, xlii.

praesertim, *adv.*, especially, particularly.

praesideo, -sēdi, —, 2 *v. n. with dat.*, control, have the management of.

praesidium, -i, *n.*, garrison, guard, bodyguard, escort; protection, support.

praesto, -stiti, -stātum *or* -stitum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, excel; do, fulfil, discharge (*a duty*).

praesum, praeesse, praefui, *v. irreg. n. with dat.*, be in command, at the head of.

praeter, *prep. with acc.*, contrary to; besides, in addition to.

praetereā, *adv.*, besides, furthermore.

praetereo, -ii, -itum, 4 *v. a. and n.*, go by; pass over, omit.

praetor, -ōris, *m.*, general (*not so used in this book*); praetor, *a Roman magistrate*; *see Introd. F.*

praetōrium, -i, *n.*, general's quarters; *see Introd. G.*

praetōrius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to a general; *praetoria cohors*, general's bodyguard, c. lxxv; of *or* belonging to a praetor, praetorian, c. vi.

praetōrius, -i, *m.*, ex-praetor, one who has held the office of a praetor.

praetūra, -ae, *f.*, office of a praetor, praetorship.

premo, pressi, pressum, 3 *v. a.*, press hard, attack, harass.

pridem, *adv.*, long ago; *iam pridem*, this long time, now for a long time.

pridiē, *adv.*, on the previous day; *pridie eius diei*, on the day before (that day).

prīmō, *superl. adv.*, at first, first, firstly.

prīmum, *superl. adv.*, at first, first; *quam primum*, as soon as possible, on the first opportunity.

prīmus, -a, -um, *superl. adj.*, first, of chief importance; *primi*, chief men; *comp.* prior.

princeps, *gen.* -cipis; *adj.*, first.

princeps, -cipis, *m.*, leader, chief man, chieftain.

prior, -us, *comp. adj.*, first (*of two*), previous, former; *superl.* primus.

pristinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, old, former, previous.

prius, *comp. adv.*, before.

prīvātus, -a, -um, *particip. of* privo, private.

prīvātus, -i, *m.*, private individual, citizen; a man not holding office, a man not possessing the *imperium*.

prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; in place of, instead of, in return for; on behalf of, for; by virtue of; *pro rata parte*, in proportion, c. xvii; *pro consulibus, pro praetore*, as proconsuls, as propraetor, c. v, vi, xxx.

probo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, prove, approve, test, commend, favour, be in favour of.

prōcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. n.*, advance, go on, go forward, proceed.

prōclīvis, -e, *adj.*, easy; inclined to.

procul, *adv.*, in the distance, at a distance, far, far off.

prōdūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3 *v. a.*, bring out, bring forward, lead out; extend, lengthen out, prolong, protract; transfer, promote.

proelior, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. n.*, fight, skirmish.

proelium, -i, *n.*, battle, fight, attack.

profectio, -ōnis, *f.*, departure, start.

prōfero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *irreg. v. a.*, bring out, hand over; advance, extend.

prōficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, make progress, advance, effect, accomplish.

proficiscor, -fectus, 3 *v. dep. n.*, start, march, advance.

profugio, -fūgi, —, 3 *v. dep. n.*, escape, make one's escape, fly.

prōgredior, -gressus, 3 *v. dep. n.*, advance, march forward; proceed to, have recourse to.

prohibeo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, prevent, hold back, keep, stop; defend, protect.

prōicio, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, fling away, throw away; abandon, desert.

proinde, *adv.*, therefore.

prōluo, -lui, -lūtum, 3 *v. a.*, wash down.

promptus, -a, -um, *particip. of* promo, ready, prepared, eager, showing keenness.

prōnuntio, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, announce, make publicly known; put to the vote, c. ii.

prope, *adv.*, near; nearly, almost; *comp.* propius, nearer; *superl.* proximē, very close; *quam proxime*, at the nearest possible point, c. lxxii.

prope, *prep. with acc.*, near.

prōpello, -puli, -pulsum, 3 *v. a.*, repel, repulse, overthrow.

propinquitas, -ātis, *f.*, nearness, proximity.

propinquus, -i, *m.*, relative, friend.

propior, -us, *comp. adj.*, nearer; *superl.* proximus.

propius, *see* prope.

prōpōno, -posui, -positum, 3 *v. a.*, set before, lay before; represent, demonstrate.

prōpositum, -i, *n.*, plan, intention, resolve, purpose.

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, owing to.

proripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3 *v. a.*, *se proripere*, to make a dash forward, hurry forward.

prōsequor, -secūtus, 3 *v. dep. a.*, follow, accompany, attend, escort.

prōtego, -xi, -ctum, 3 *v. a.*, cover, protect.

prōtinus, *adv.*, straight on; instantly; *with* ex, immediately after.

prōvideo, -vīdi, -vīsum, 2 *v. a. and n.*, prepare, provide, make provision for.

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province; administration *or* government of a province.

prōvoco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, stimulate, incite, influence, encourage.

proximē, *see* prope.

proximus, -a, -um, *superl. adj.*, next, following; nearest; *comp.* propior.

pūblicē, *adv.*, in the name of the state; for the advantage of the citizens.

pūblicum, -i, *n.*, state property, public treasury, c. xxiii; public granary, c. xxxvi; public place, c. xx.

pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to the state; *res publica*, state, commonwealth; interests of the state, public business.

pudor, -ōris, *m.*, sense of honour, sense of shame.

pugna, -ae, *f.*, fight.

pugno, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. n.*, fight.

purgo, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a.*, clear, exonerate, justify.

puto, -āvi, -ātum, I *v. a.*, think.

quā, *adv.*, where, at the point which.

quadringenti, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, four hundred.

quaero, -sīvi *or* -sii, -sītum, 3 *v. a.*, seek, search for, ask for.

quaestor, -ōris, *m.*, quaestor, finance officer; *see Introd. F.*

quam, *adv. and conj.*, than, as; *with superlatives*, as much as possible; *quam primum*, at the earliest opportunity; *ante quam*, *prius quam*, before (that).

quantum, *adv.*, how much; *quantum . . . tanto longius*, the more . . . so much the farther.

quārē, *adv.*, wherefore, on this account.

quārtus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, fourth; *quartus decimus*, fourteenth.

quaterni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, four each.

quattuor, *card. num. adj.*, four.

quattuorviri, -ōrum, *pl. m.*, board of four, the chief magistrates of a *municipium*; *see Introd. F.*

-que, *enclitic conj.*, and.

querimōnia, -ae, *f.*, complaint.

queror, questus, 3 *v. dep. a. and n.*, lament, complain, find fault.

quī, quae, quod, *relat. pron.*, who, which, he who.

quī, quae *or* qua, quod, *indef. pron. used as adj.*, any.

quīcumque, quae-, quod-, *indef. rel. pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever.

quīdam, quae-, quod-, *indef. pron.*, a, a certain, a kind of.

quidem, *adv.*, indeed; *ne . . . quidem*, not . . . even.

quiesco, -ēvi, -ētum, 3 *v. n.*, rest, sleep.

quiētus, -a, -um, *particip. of* quiesco, peaceful, calm, cool, patient.

quīn, *conj. used after negatives*, but that, as not to, without, to prevent.

quindecim, *card. num. adj.*, fifteen.

quinquāginta, *card. num. adj.*, fifty.

quinque, *card. num. adj.*, five.

quis, quae, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who? what?

quis, quae, quid, *indef. pron.*, any one, anything.

quisquam (quaequam), quicquam *or* quidquam, *indef. pron. used with negatives*, any one, any thing, any.

quisque, quaeque, quodque, *indef. pron.*, each, every.

quō, *adv.*, whither, to which.

quō, *conj. used with comparatives*, in order that, to the end that; *quo minus*, that not, from.

quoad, *conj.*, until; so long as.

quod, *conj.*, because, for, that, the fact that, inasmuch as, since; *quod si*, but if, if however.

quōnam, *adv.*, whither, whither pray.

quoniam, *conj.*, since, seeing that, inasmuch as.

quoque, *adv.*, also, too.

quōquō versus, *adv.*, in every direction, c. xxxvi; every way, square, c. xxv.

quotienscumque, *conj.*, as often as.

rādix, -īcis, *f.*, root, foot, base.

rapiditas, -ātis, *f.*, speed, velocity, strength (*of a river's current*).

rapidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, swift, strong (*of a river's current*); *superl.* rapidissimus.

raptim, *adv.*, hastily, hurriedly.

rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, at wide intervals, in open order, in small bodies.

ratio, *f.*, reckoning; method, plan, consideration; condition, situation, c. lxxvi; *omni ratione*, on all grounds, c. lxvii; *rationem habere*, take account of, take thought for, make allowance for, c. ix, xiii, xx, xxxiii.

ratis, -is, *f.*, raft.

ratus, -a, -um, *particip. of* reor, fixed, certain; *pro rata parte*, in proportion, c. xvii.

recens, *gen.* -ntis, *adj.*, fresh, recent.

receptus, -ūs, *m.*, retreat, refuge, way of retreat.

recipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 *v. a.*, get back, recover, regain; bring back, withdraw, recall; take possession of, occupy; take in, welcome; meet with, c. lxxviii; *se recipere*, retire, retreat, withdraw.

recito, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, read, read aloud.

rectē, *adv.*, rightly.

rectus, -a, -um, *particip. of* rego, straight.

recurro, -curri, —, 3 *v. n.*, come back, return.

recūso, 1 *v. a. and n.*, refuse, decline, object.

reddo, -didi, -ditum, 3 *v. a.*, give back, restore, return; deliver (*letters or dispatches*).

redeo, -ii, -itum, 4 *v. n.*, go back, return; fall, c. iv.

redigo, -ēgi, -actum, 3 *v. a.*, bring back, restore.

redimo, -ēmi, -emptum, 3 *v. a.*, buy back; gain, secure.

redūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3 *v. a.*, march back, withdraw.

refero, referre, rettuli, relātum, *v. irreg. a.*, bring back; *se referre*, to return, retreat; *pedem referre*, to draw back, give way, retreat; *gratiam referre*, to express gratitude; *ad senatum de* or *ex aliqua re referre*, to bring forward a motion in the senate, to start a debate in the House, on some subject.

reficio, -feci, -fectum, 3 *v. a.*, repair, rest.

reformīdo, —, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, feel apprehension of, fear.

regio, -ōnis, *f.*, direction; district, quarter; vicinity, neighbourhood; *e regione*, in a straight line with, over against, c. xxv.

religio, -ōnis, *f.*, religious scruples, religious instinct, reverence, respect; obligation (*of an oath*), c. lxvii, lxxvi.

relinquo, -liqui, -lictum, 3 *v. a.*, leave, leave behind, abandon; retain, detain, c. xli; *pass. impers. or with* nihil, to remain, c. xxix, note, lxiii, lxxix.

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the remaining, the rest, the other; future, c. lxxiii, lxxviii.

remaneo, -mansi, -mansum, 2 *v. n.*, stay, remain behind.

remedium, -i, *n.*, cure, relief.

rēmex, -igis, *m.*, oarsman.

remissus, -a, -um, *particip. of* remitto, careless, slack.

remitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, send back, let go.

removeo, -mōvi, -mōtum, 2 *v. a.*, take away.

rēmus, -i, *m.*, oar.

renuntio, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, bring back word, report.

repello, reppuli, repulsum, 3 *v. a.*, drive back, repel.

repentē, *adv.*, suddenly.

repentīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sudden, hasty, unexpected.

reperio, repperi, repertum, 4 *v. a.*, learn, discover, find out.

reprehendo, -di, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, haul off, tow off; blame, condemn.

repugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, oppose, resist.
repulsa, -ae, *f.*, rejection, defeat (*in a candidature for office*).
rēs, rei, *f.*, matter, subject, business, affairs, considerations, fact, event; object; undertaking, attempt; *res publica*, state, commonwealth; interests of the state, public business; *res frumentaria*, supplies, provisions; *res militaris*, the art of war, warfare; *res Caesaris*, Caesar's cause, c. xxviii; *rem obtinere*, to gain one's object, win the victory; *rem gerere*, to fight.
rescrībo, -psi, -ptum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, write back, reply in writing.
reservo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, keep, retain, hold in reserve.
resisto, -stiti, —, 3 *v. n.*, halt, stay behind; withstand, oppose, resist (*with dat.*).
respicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, look back upon; have regard for, study the interests of, c. i; think of, be mindful of, take into consideration, c. v.
respondeo, -di, -sum, 2 *v. a. and n.*, reply, answer.
responsum, -i, *n.*, reply, answer.
restituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, give back, restore, re-establish.
retineo, -tinui, -tentum, 2 *v. a.*, keep back, retain, detain; hold fast, grapple; keep.
retorqueo, -torsi, -tortum, 2 *v. a.*, twist back; *pass.*, turn back, wheel round.
retraho, -traxi, -tractum, 3 *v. a.*, drag back.
revertor, -versus, 3 *v. dep. n.*, return, go back.
revoco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, recall.
rex, rēgis, *m.*, king.
rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank.
rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, rumour.
rūpes, -is, *f.*, rock.
rursus, *adv.*, back, back again, again.

sacrāmentum, -i, *n.*, oath of allegiance, military oath.
saepe, *adv.*, often; *comp.* saepius.
sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow.
sagittarius, -i, *m.*, archer.
sagum, -i, *n.*, military cloak; *see Introd. G.*
saltem, *adv.*, at least; at any rate, even.
saltus, -ūs, *m.*, wooded height; mountain range; mountain pass.
salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety, life.
salvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, safe, unharmed.
sancio, -xi, -ctum, 4 *v. a.*, solemnly establish, ratify.
sanctus, -a, -um, *particip. of* sancio, holy, sacred; *comp.* sanctior.
sāno, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, heal, restore, repair, allay, calm.
sarcinae, -ārum, *pl. f.* (*rare in sing.*), packs, loads; *see Introd. G.*
sarcinārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to packs; *sarcinaria iumenta*, pack-horses, baggage-animals.
sarcio, sarsi, sartum, 4 *v. a.*, patch, mend; repair, make good, retrieve.
satis, *adv.*, enough; *indeclin. subst. with gen.*, enough (of); *satis facere*, to do enough for, satisfy, satisfy the claims of (*with dat.*).
saxum, -i, *n.*, rock, stone.
scālae, -arum, *pl. f.*, ladder.
scapha, -ae, *f.*, light rowing-boat.
scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime; *scelus concipere*, to commit a crime; to have criminal designs.
scienter, *adv.*, skilfully, cleverly.
scientia, -ae, *f.*, skill.
scribo, -psi, -ptum, 3 *v. a.*, write.
scūtātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, armed with the *scutum* or large shield;

see Introd. G, and chap. xxxix, note.

sē *or* **sēsē** (*acc.*), *gen.* sui; *reflex. pron.*, himself; *as subject of infin.*, he; *inter se*, with one another, c. xx, xl. 2; from each other, c. xl. 1.

sēcessio, -ōnis, *f.*, withdrawal; schism; insurrection, popular rising; revolutionary meeting, conspiracy.

sēclūdo, -si, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, cut off, separate.

sēcrētō, *adv.*, in private, in secret.

sēcum, *for* cum se.

secundus, -a, -um, *adj.*, following, next; second; successful.

sed, *conj.*, but.

sēditio, -ōnis, *f.*, mutiny.

segnis, -e, *adj.*, slack, lukewarm, faint-hearted.

sēmestris, -e, *adj.*, lasting six months.

sēmōtus, -a, -um, *particip. of* semoveo, apart, at a distance.

semper, *adv.*, always.

senātor, -ōris, *m.*, senator.

senatōrius, -a, -um, *adj.*, senatorial.

senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate, the Roman senate.

sententia, -ae, *f.*, opinion, sentiment; proposal, motion; vote.

sentio, sensi, sensum, 4 *v. a.*, perceive, notice.

sēparātim, *adv.*, apart.

septem, *card. num. adj.*, seven.

septemdecim, *card. num. adj.*, seventeen.

septimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, seventh.

septuāgintā, *card. num. adj.*, seventy.

sequor, secūtus, 3 *v. dep. a. and n.*, follow, pursue; *sententiam sequi*, to agree to a proposal, adopt a motion, c. ii; *gratiam, amicitiam Caesaris sequi*, to make Caesar's favour, friendship, one's aim, to be anxious, eager for it, to press for it.

sermo, -ōnis, *m.*, talk, conversation.

servo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, keep, guard, preserve, save; *signa servare*, to preserve their proper formation, c. lxxi.

servus, -i, *m.*, slave.

sēsē = **sē.**

sestertium, -i, *n.*, *when used with the numeral adverbs* = 100,000 sesterces; *see note*, c. xxiii.

sex, *card. num. adj.*, six.

sexāgies, *num. adv.*, sixty times.

sexcenti, -ae, -a, *ord. num. adj.*, six hundred.

sextus, *ord. num. adj.*, sixth.

sī, *conj.*, if; in the hope that.

sīc, *adv.*, so, in this manner, in such a way.

significātio, -ōnis, *f.*, intimation, indication, expression, sign; approbation, applause.

significo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, show by signs, indicate, intimate.

signum, -i, *n.*, signal, order, sign; *signa mittere*, to show signs of, c. lxxi; military standard (*see Introd. G*, and c. xviii, *note*); *signa inferre*, to advance to the attack, charge, c. lxiv, lxxxii; *ab signis discedere*, to desert the standards, leave the ranks, c. xliv; *signa transferre*, to desert, cross over, c. xxiv, lx, lxxiv; *signa servare*, to preserve their proper formation, to keep with their own colours, c. lxxi; *recipere se ad signa*, to fall back upon the main body, c. xliii; *signa consistere iubere*, to order a halt, c. lxxix; *signis collatis*, as the standards were bunched together, c. lxxi.

silentium, -i, *n.*, silence.

similis, -e, *adj.*, like.

simul, *adv.*, at the same time;

as soon as; *simul atque*, as soon as.
simulātio, -ōnis, *f.*, pretence, pretext.
sīn, *conj.*, but if.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.
singuli, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one to each, separate, single, individual.
sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left; *sinistra* (sc. *manus*), left hand.
sīve . . . sīve, *conj.*, whether . . . or.
socius, -i, *m.*, ally.
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun.
sōlācium, -i, *n.*, relief, consolation, comfort, encouragement.
soleo, -itus, 2 *v. dep. n.*, be accustomed.
sōlum, *adv.*, alone, only.
sōlus, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, only.
solvo, solvi, solūtum, 3 *v. a.*, loose; *naves solvere*, to weigh anchor, set sail.
sors, sortis, *f.*, lot; share.
spatium, -i, *n.*, intervening space, distance; interval, respite, opportunity; time.
spēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, hope, expect.
spēs, -ei, hope, expectation; *in eam spem venerat*, he had conceived the hope.
sponte, *abl. f.* (no nom.); *sponte sua*, of one's own accord; on one's own account.
statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately.
statio, *f.*, post, position; outpost companies *or* squadrons, piquets; *in statione*, on guard, c. xliii, lxxv; *stationes obtinebant*, were riding at anchor, c. lvi.
statūmen, -inis, *n.*, rib, framework, of a boat.
statuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, determine, order, decide, fix; pitch (*tents*).
stīpendium, -i, *n.*, pay, wages; tax.
stīpes, -itis, *m.*, stake; trunk of a tree.
sto, steti, stātum, 1 *v. n.*, stand, stand firm, stand up against; *stare cum*, to take the side of, range oneself with; *per me stat*, it is my fault, it is owing to me, I am responsible.
studeo, -ui, —, 2 *v. n.*, be anxious, be eager.
studium, -i, *n.*, ambition, energy, enthusiasm, eagerness.
sub, *prep. with acc.* (motion) under, close to; (time) towards, about, just before; *prep. with abl.* (rest) under, below; *sub armis*, under arms; *sub onere*, in heavy marching order; *sub ipsa profectione*, at the very moment of his departure, c. xxvii.
subeo, -ii, -itum, 4 *v. a.*, go under; submit to, undergo.
subicio, -ieci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, throw under; instigate, put up, suborn.
subiectē, *adv.*, humbly, submissively; *superl.* subiectissimē.
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly, hurriedly.
sublātus, *see* tollo.
sublevo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, help, assist, lift out, rescue.
subsequor, -secūtus, 3 *v. dep. a. and n.*, follow close after, follow at once.
subsidiārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, supporting, in support; *subsidiariae cohortes*, reserve-cohorts.
subsidium, -i, *n.*, help, support; reinforcements, reserves; resource, remedy, expedient.
subsisto, -stiti, —, 3 *v. n.*, stay behind, stop, halt.
subsum, subesse, —, *v. irreg. n.*, be near, close at hand.
subvenio, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 *v. n.*, come to the support of, help (*with dat.*).
succēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, approach, advance, press forward; relieve, replace.
sudis, -is, *f.*, stake, pile, post.

suffrāgor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. n. with dat.*, support, recommend.

sum, esse, fui, *v. irreg. n.*, be; belong to, be the duty of, c. lxxii.

summa, -ae, *f.*, chief part, main body; main points, c. x; final settlement, c. lxxxii; *summa imperi*, the chief command, c. iv; *summa belli administrandi*, the chief management, supreme direction of the war, c. xxxvi; *summa rerum*, the crisis in the situation, c. xxi.

summitto, -misi, -missum, 3 *v. a.*, send up, send to one's assistance, send to oppose (*always with the idea of supporting one party against another*).

summoveo, -mōvi, -mōtum, 2 *v. a.*, drive back, drive off.

summus, -a, -um, *superl. adj.*, highest, greatest, very great, very serious; *summa ripa*, the edge of the river-bank, c. xlviii; *summum pectus*, the upper part of their chests, c. lxii; *posit.* superus; *comp.* superior.

sūmo, -mpsi, -mptum, 3 *v. a.*, take; bring forward, regard; *mutuas pecunias sumere*, to borrow money, c. xxxix.

superior, -us, *comp. adj.*, higher, former, previous, victorious; *posit.* superus; *superl.* suprēmus *or* summus.

supero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, prevail, conquer, defeat; go past, go beyond; overflow.

suppeto, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, 3 *v. n.*, be in stock, c. xlix.

supplicium, -i, *n.*, punishment (*usually of death*), suffering, distress.

supporto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, bring up, convey, supply.

supprimo, -pressi, -pressum, 3 *v. a.*, check, stop.

suprā, *prep. with acc.*, above; *adv.*, above, before.

suscenseo, -sui, -sum, 2 *v. n.*, be angry.

suscipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 *v. a.*, undertake, enter upon; undertake the administration of, assume the control of.

suspicor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a. and n.*, suspect, anticipate.

sustineo, -tinui, -tentum, 2 *v. a. and n.*, stop, hold back, withstand, resist; hold out, endure.

sustuli, *see* tollo.

suus, *possess. pron.*, his, their, his own, their own; *in suam dignitatem*, to their proper position, c. xxii.

tabernāculum, -i, *n.*, tent.

tabulātum, -i, *n.*, floor, story.

tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, of such a kind.

tam, *adv.*, so.

tamen, *adv.*, but, yet, still, however.

tametsī, *conj.*, although.

tandem, *adv.*, at last, finally.

tantō, *adv.*, so much.

tantum, *adv.*, so much; *tantum aberant . . . ut*, they were so far from . . . that, c. lxxix.

tantummodo, *adv.*, only.

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so much, so great.

tarditas, -ātis, *f.*, slowness, lack of speed.

tardo, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, hinder, retard, check.

tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, inert.

tectum, -i, *n.*, roof; house.

tego, texi, tectum, 3 *v. a.*, cover, cover up, conceal, protect; *tectae naves*, ships with decks.

tēlum, -i, *n.*, weapon, missile, javelin.

temerē, blindly, rashly, recklessly.

tempestas, -atis, *f.*, time, season; storm.

templum, -i, *n.*, sanctuary, temple.

tempto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. freq. a.*, try, attempt; try to win over.

tempus, -oris, *n.*, time, season, chance, opportunity.
teneo, -nui, -ntum, 2 *v. a.*, hold, keep, maintain, guard, hold up, surround; *locum non tenere*, to give ground, c. xliv; *castris se tenere*, to remain in the camp, c. lxix; *primam aciem tenere*, to form the front line, c. lxxxiii.
tenuis, -e, *adj.*, thin; feeble, weak.
tergum, -i, *n.*, back; *terga vertere*, *convertere*, to take to flight.
terni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, three each.
terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land.
terreo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. a.*, frighten, alarm.
terror, -ōris, *m.*, terror, dread, panic.
tertius, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, third; *tertius decimus*, thirteenth.
timeo, -ui, —, 2 *v. a. and n.*, be afraid, fear.
timidē, *adv.*, fearfully, nervously; *comp.* timidius.
timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear, dread.
tollo, sustuli, sublātum, 3 *v. a.*, carry off, steal, take away, remove; *ancoram tollere*, to weigh anchor.
tormentum, -i, *n.*, military engine; *pl.* artillery; *see Introd. G.*
tot, *indeclin. adj.*, so many.
totidem, *indeclin. adj.*, just as many, the same number.
tōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the whole, entire.
trabs, trabis, *f.*, beam, timber.
trādo, -didi, -ditum, 3 *v. a.*, hand over, betray; pass from hand to hand.
trādūco, -duxi, -ductum, 3 *v. a.*, take across, bring across.
trāgula, -ae, *f.*, javelin (*which was thrown with the help of a strap*).
traho, traxi, tractum, 3 *v. a.*, draw, attract.
trāicio, -ieci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, throw across, take across.
trāno, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, swim across.
trans, *prep. with acc.*, across.
transcendo, -di, -sum, 1 *v. a. and n.*, climb across, surmount, traverse.
transcurro, -curri *or* -cucurri, -cursum, 3 *v. a.*, run past, sail past.
transeo, -īvi *or* -ii, -itum, 4 *v. a. and n.*, go across, cross; desert.
transfero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *irreg. v. a.*, transfer, change the seat of (a war); *signa transferre*, to desert, to take one's standards across.
transgredior, -gressus, 3 *v. dep. a. and n.*, cross, pass over, traverse.
transmarīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, from across the sea, foreign.
transporto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, carry across, convey across.
transversus, -a, -um, *particip. of* transverto, turned across, across.
trecenti, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, three hundred.
tredecim, *card. num. adj.*, thirteen.
trepidanter, *adv.*, anxiously; *comp.* trepidantius.
trēs, tria, *card. num. adj.*, three.
tribūnicius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to a tribune, tribunician.
tribūnus, -i, *m.*, tribune; *tribunus* (*plebis*), a tribune of the people; *see Introd. F*; *tribunus* (*militum*), a military tribune; *see Introd. G.*
tribuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3 *v. a.*, grant, afford, render.
triduum, -i, *n.*, period of three days.
trīgintā, *card. num. adj.*, thirty.
triplex, *gen.* -plicis, *adj.*, threefold, triple.
tueor, —, 2 *v. dep. a.*, watch; defend, protect.

tum, *adv.*, then, at this *or* that time, on this *or* that occasion; *cum . . . tum*, both . . . and.
tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, difficulty, disturbance, trouble.
tumulus, -i, *m.*, hill, knoll, eminence.
turbātē, *adv.*, confusedly, in confusion.
turbulentus, -a, -um, *adj.*, seditious, revolutionary.
turpis, -e, *adj.*, dishonourable.
turris, -is, *f.*, military tower.
tūtō, *adv.*, in safety, safely.
tūtor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. a.*, protect; avert, ward off.
tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, safe, secure, out of danger.

ūber, *gen.* ūberis, *adj.*, fruitful; *comp.* uberior, exaggerated, magnified, flowery.
ubi, *conj. and adv.*, when, where.
ubique, *adv.*, everywhere, anywhere.
ullus, -a, -um, *adj.*, any.
ulterior, -us, *comp. adj.*, farther, more distant; *superl.* ultimus.
ultimus, -a, -um, *superl. adj.*, final, farthest, extreme.
ultro, *adv.*, to the farther side, beyond; beyond what is required; voluntarily, on his own initiative, c. xxxii; actually, into the bargain, what is more, c. lxxix, lxxxvi.
umerus, -i, *m.*, shoulder.
ūmidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, damp, unseasoned.
ūnā, *adv.*, together.
undecim, *card. num. adj.*, eleven.
undique, *adv.*, from all directions, from every side.
ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, all, all together, in a body, in full force.
ūnus, -a, -um, *card. num. adj.*, one, alone, single.
urbānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to a city; of *or* belonging to Rome; *rebus urbanis praesidere*, to control the conduct of affairs at home, to administer the home government.
urbs, urbis, *f.*, city, the City, Rome; *used also in this book of* Massilia, c. xxxv.
ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, advantage, usefulness, experience; need, requirement; *usui esse*, to be advantageous, to be of service, to be of assistance.
ut *or* **uti,** *adv. and conj.*, as; when; in order that; so that.
ūter, -tris, *m.*, skin; *a bag made of an animal's skin, used for water or wine; often inflated and used for crossing streams.*
ŭter, -tra, -trum, *interrog. and relat. pron.*, which (*of two*).
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *adj.*, each (*of two*), both.
uti, *see* ut.
ūtor, ūsus, 3 *v. dep. n., with abl.*, use, make use of, employ, avail oneself of, take advantage of, adopt.
utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides.

vaco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. n.*, be empty, free, unoccupied.
vacuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, destitute of, free, unoccupied.
vadosus, -a, -um, *adj.*, shallow.
vadum, -i, *n.*, ford.
vagor, -ātus, 1 *v. dep. n.*, wander, range, scour the country.
valeo, -ui, -itum, 2 *v. n.*, be strong, be powerful; avail, have weight.
valetūdo, -inis, *f.*, health, ill health.
valles *or* **vallis,** -is, *f.*, valley.
vallum, -i, *n.*, rampart, entrenchment, fortification; palisade, stockade.
varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse, with varying fortunes, full of varied incident.
vās, -is, *n.*, *pl.* vāsa, vāsorum;

dish, vessel; *pl.* baggage, military equipment; *vasa conclamare*, to give the signal for packing up.
vectigal, -ālis, *n.*, tax; revenue, income.
vehementer, *adv.*, hotly, strongly; *comp.* vehementius.
venio, vēni, ventum, 4 *v. n.*, come; *in spem venire*, to form hopes, c. lxxii.
ventus, -i, *m.*, wind.
verbum, -i, *n.*, word.
vereor, -itus, 2 *v. dep. a. and n.*, fear, be afraid.
vergo, —, —, 3 *v. n.*, incline, slope.
vērō, *adv.*, in fact, certainly, but, however; (*to mark a climax*) even.
versus, *see* quoquo.
verto, -ti, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, turn; *in suam contumeliam vertere*, to construe as an affront to oneself; *terga vertere*, to take to flight.
vesper, *m.*, *acc.* vesperum, *gen.* vesperis *or* vesperi; evening.
veterānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, veteran, composed of veterans.
veto, -ui, -itum, 1 *v. a.*, forbid.
vetus, *gen.* veteris, *adj.*, old, former, veteran, of long standing.
vetustas, -ātis, *f.*, ancient times, antiquity.
via, -ae, *f.*, road, way, route.
victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory, success.
victus, -ūs, *m.*, food.
vīcus, -i, *m.*, row of houses; street, c. xxvii; village.
video, vīdi, vīsum, 2 *v. a.*, see, notice; *pass.*, seem, appear.
vigilia, -ae, *f.*, night-watch; *pl.* sentries, vedettes.
vīgintī, *card. num. adj.*, twenty.
vīmen, -inis, *n.*, osier.
vinco, vīci, victum, 3 *v. a. and n.*, conquer, defeat, prove victorious.
vindico, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*: claim; defend; *populum in libertatem vindicare*, to restore the people to freedom, to re-establish their freedom, c. xxii.
vīnea, -ae, *f.*, vineyard; shed, defence, mantlet.
vir, viri, *m.*, man.
vīres, *see* vis.
virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*, courage, valour; merit, virtue.
vīs, *acc.* vim, *no gen.*, *f.*, violence, force, might; *vis equitum*, the fierce charge of the cavalry, c. lxx; *pl.* vires, virium, strength, powers.
vīso, -si, -sum, 3 *v. freq. a. and n.*, view, watch; visit.
vīta, -ae, *f.*, life.
vitium, -i, *n.*, faulty character, disadvantageous position, c. lxxxi; moral fault, vice.
vīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, avoid, escape.
vīvo, vixi, victum, 3 *v. n.*, live, be alive.
vīvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, alive, living.
vix, *adv.*, with difficulty, barely, scarcely.
vocābulum, -i, *n.*, name, designation, appellation.
voco, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, call, summon, invite.
volo, velle, volui, *v. irreg. a. and n.*, be willing, wish, desire, want.
voluntas, -ātis, *f.*, wish, desire; consent; goodwill, approval.
vōtum, -i, *n.*, solemn religious promise, vow.
vox, vōcis, *f.*, voice, shout, cry, talk, utterance, expression; formula, terms.
vulgō, *adv.*, everywhere; commonly.
vulnero, -āvi, -ātum, 1 *v. a.*, wound, hurt.
vulnus, -eris, *n.*, wound, casualty.
vultus, -ūs, *m.*, face, expression of face.

INDEX TO THE NOTES

(GRAMMAR AND ANTIQUITIES)

Caesar, C. Juliu
Commentarior
primus; ed. by B

DATE	N
Sept 29/58	P J. Halpi
	Ret